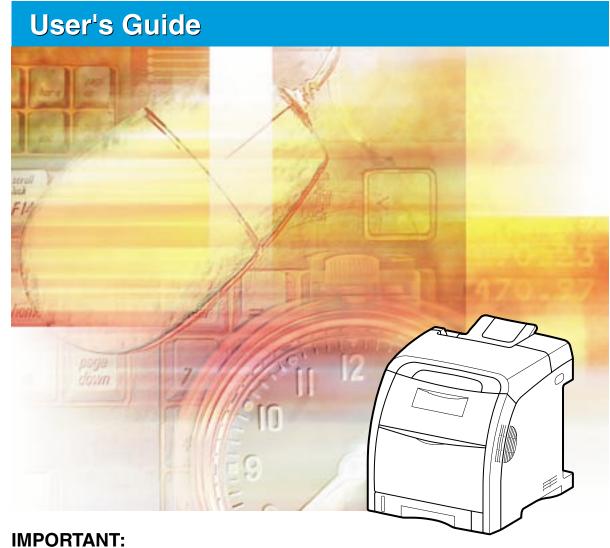
### Canon

## Color imageRUNNER LBP5360



Read this manual carefully before using your printer. Save this manual for future reference.

ENG

# LBP5360 Laser Printer User's Guide



### **Manuals for the Printer**

The manuals for this printer are arranged as follows. Please refer to them for detailed information.



Guides with this symbol are PDF manuals included on the accompanying CD-ROM. (See the footnote.)

- Installation
- Connecting to a Computer
- Basic Operations
- Troubleshooting
- Installing the Printer Driver
- Printing a Document
- Using the Supplied Software
- Setting Up the Network Environment for Printing
- Managing the Printer in the Network Environment
- Operating/Setting the Printer from the Web Browser

User's Guide (This Manual)

CD-ROM

**Driver Guide** 



**Network Guide** 



**Remote UI Guide** 





# How This Manual Is Organized

Chapter 1	Before You Start
Chapter 2	Installing the Printer
Chapter 3	Using the Printer
Chapter 4	Loading and Outputting Paper
Chapter 5	The Printing Environment
Chapter 6	Printing Environment Settings
Chapter 7	Routine Maintenance
Chapter 8	Troubleshooting
Chapter 9	Installing the Optional Accessories
Chapter 10	Appendix

## **Contents**

	Preface viii
	How To Use This Manual viii
	Symbols Used in This Manualviii
	Keys and Buttons Used in This Manual viii
	Abbreviations Used in This Manual
	Legal Notices
	Model Namex
	FCC (Federal Communications Commission)
	EMC Directive (220 - 240 V model)
	Laser Safety
	International Energy Star-Program xii
	WEEE Directive xiii
	License Notice xiii
	Trademarks xiii
	Copyright xiv
	Disclaimersxv
	Legal Limitations on the Usage of Your Product and the Use of Images xvi
	Important Safety Instructionsxvii
	Installation
	Power Supply
	Handlingxx
	Maintenance and Inspectionsxxi
	Consumables
Chapter 1	Before You Start
	Features and Benefits
	User Manual CD-ROM Menu
	System Requirements
	Using The CD-ROM Menu
	Parts and Their Functions1-7
	Printer
	Front View
	Rear View
	Inner View1-9
	Control Panel
	Display

	Optional Accessories	1-13
	Paper Feeder	1-13
	Expansion RAM	1-14
	Hard Disk	1-15
Chapter 2	Installing the Printer	
	Installation Procedure	2-2
	Installation Site	
	Installation Environment	
	Temperature/Humidity Conditions	
	Power Supply Requirements	
	Installation Requirements	
	Installation Space	
	Required Peripheral Space	
	Foot Positions.	
	Precautions for Handling	
	Confirming the Package Contents	
	Carrying the Printer to the Installation Site and Removing	
	the Packing Materials on the Outside of the Printer	2-9
	Installing the Toner Cartridges	
	Loading Paper	
	Connecting the Cables	
	Connecting the Power Cord	
	Connecting to a Computer	
	Using a LAN Cable	
	Using a USB Cable	
	Using a Printer Cable	
	Turning the Printer ON and Checking the Printer Operation	
	Turning the Printer ON	
	Registering a Paper Size	
	Specifying a Paper Type	
	Checking the Operations with Configuration Page Print	
	Printing Configuration Page Print	
	Contents of Configuration Page Print	
	When the Printer Does Not Operate Properly	
	Changing the Language Used in the Display	
	Turning the Printer OFF	
	When Not Using a Hard Disk	
	when using a maru disk (Unity When a maru disk is "Installed")	∠-4

### **Chapter 3** Using the Printer

	Power Saving (Power Save Mode)
	Online and Offline 3-5
	Placing the Printer Online 3-5
	Placing the Printer Offline 3-6
	Printing/Saving Jobs (Only When the Hard Disk Is Installed) 3-7
	Job Process Method Types 3-7
	Printing with a Password Specified (Secured Print/Encrypted Secured Print) 3-9
	Printing a Job Saved in a Box (Stored Job Print)
	Canceling a Job
	Outputting Data (Forced Output)
	Canceling a Job (Cancel Job)
	Canceling the Process Currently Being Performed (Soft Reset) 3-16
	Canceling All the Jobs (Hard Reset)
	Lastina and O. Lastina Bassa
Chapter 4	Loading and Outputting Paper
	Paper Requirements
	Usable Paper
	Paper Size
	Paper Type
	Abbreviations of Paper Sizes
	Printable Area
	Unusable Paper
	Storing Paper
	Storing Printouts
	Paper Source
	Paper Source Type
	Paper Capacity of Paper Source
	Selecting a Paper Source 4-13
	Precautions for Handling the Multi-purpose Tray or Paper Cassette 4-14
	Output Tray
	Output Tray
	Paper Capacity of the Output Tray
	Printing from the Paper Cassette
	Precautions on Loading Paper
	Loading Paper in the Paper Cassette
	When Loading Standard Size Paper
	When Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper)
	or Paper at a Size of Foolscap or 16K
	Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Paper Cassette
	Specifying the Type of the Paper in the Paper Cassette 4-33

	Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray	4-35
	Loading Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray	4-36
	When Loading Paper (Other than Envelopes)	4-37
	When Loading Envelopes	
	Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray	4-48
	Specifying the Type of the Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray	4-50
	2-sided Printing	4-53
	Switching Between Automatic 2-sided Printing and 1-sided Printing	4-54
	Loading Paper When Performing Automatic 2-sided Printing	4-55
	When Feeding Paper from the Paper Cassette	4-55
	When Loading Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray	4-56
	Manual 2-sided Printing	
	Loading Paper When Performing Manual 2-sided Printing	4-58
Chapter 5	The Printing Environment	
	Many Fynations	F 0
	Menu Functions	
	Setting Priority	
	Menu Categories	
	How to Use the Operation Keys	
	• •	
	How to View the Display	
	Menu Structure	
	How to View the Display	
	Menu Functions and Menu Operation	
	SETUP Menu	
	SETUP Menu Functions	
	Operating Procedure for the SETUP Menu	
	UTILITY Menu	
	UTILITY Menu Functions	
	Operating Procedure for the UTILITY Menu	
	JOB Menu Functions	
	RESET Menu	
	RESET Menu Functions	
	Operating Procedure for the RESET Menu	
	CANCEL JOB Menu	
	CANCEL JOB Menu Functions	
	Operating Procedure for the CANCEL JOB Menu	
	SELECT FEEDER Menu	
	SELECT FEEDER Menu Functions	
	Operating Procedure for the SELECT FEEDER Menu	
	Initializing the SETUP Menu	
	<del>-</del>	

### **Chapter 6** Printing Environment Settings

	Setting Items
	SETUP Menu
	UTILITY Menu
	JOB Menu
	RESET Menu
	SELECT FEEDER Menu 6-12
	SETUP Menu Settings
	CONTROL MENU Options
	FEEDER MENU Options
	LAYOUT MENU Options. 6-31
	QUALITY MENU Options 6-35
	INTERFACE MENU Options 6-45
	USER MAIN. Options
	PCL SETUP Options
	UFR II SETUP Options 6-61
	UTILITY Menu Settings
	JOB Menu Settings
	RESET Menu Settings
	SELECT FEEDER Menu Settings 6-71
Chapter 7	Routine Maintenance
	Pontaging Tonor Cartridges 7-2
	Replacing Toner Cartridges
	When a Message Appears
	When a Message Appears
	When a Message Appears7-2Replacing a Toner Cartridge7-3Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges7-16
	When a Message Appears7-2Replacing a Toner Cartridge7-3Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges7-16Storing Toner Cartridges7-18
	When a Message Appears7-2Replacing a Toner Cartridge7-3Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges7-16Storing Toner Cartridges7-18Cleaning the Fixing Roller7-19
	When a Message Appears. 7-2 Replacing a Toner Cartridge. 7-3 Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges 7-16 Storing Toner Cartridges 7-18 Cleaning the Fixing Roller. 7-19 Adjusting the Printing Position 7-21
	When a Message Appears7-2Replacing a Toner Cartridge.7-3Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges7-16Storing Toner Cartridges7-18Cleaning the Fixing Roller.7-19Adjusting the Printing Position7-21Checking the Printing Position7-21
	When a Message Appears7-2Replacing a Toner Cartridge.7-3Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges7-16Storing Toner Cartridges7-18Cleaning the Fixing Roller.7-19Adjusting the Printing Position7-21Checking the Printing Position7-21Adjusting the Printing Position7-23
	When a Message Appears7-2Replacing a Toner Cartridge.7-3Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges7-16Storing Toner Cartridges7-18Cleaning the Fixing Roller.7-19Adjusting the Printing Position7-21Checking the Printing Position7-21Adjusting the Printing Position7-23Cleaning the Outside of the Printer7-27
	When a Message Appears7-2Replacing a Toner Cartridge.7-3Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges7-16Storing Toner Cartridges7-18Cleaning the Fixing Roller.7-19Adjusting the Printing Position7-21Checking the Printing Position7-21Adjusting the Printing Position7-23Cleaning the Outside of the Printer7-27Moving the Printer7-30
	When a Message Appears7-2Replacing a Toner Cartridge.7-3Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges7-16Storing Toner Cartridges7-18Cleaning the Fixing Roller.7-19Adjusting the Printing Position7-21Checking the Printing Position7-21Adjusting the Printing Position7-23Cleaning the Outside of the Printer7-27
Chapter 8	When a Message Appears7-2Replacing a Toner Cartridge.7-3Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges7-16Storing Toner Cartridges7-18Cleaning the Fixing Roller.7-19Adjusting the Printing Position7-21Checking the Printing Position7-21Adjusting the Printing Position7-23Cleaning the Outside of the Printer7-27Moving the Printer7-30
Chapter 8	When a Message Appears7-2Replacing a Toner Cartridge.7-3Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges7-16Storing Toner Cartridges7-18Cleaning the Fixing Roller.7-19Adjusting the Printing Position7-21Checking the Printing Position7-21Adjusting the Printing Position7-23Cleaning the Outside of the Printer7-27Moving the Printer7-30Handling the Printer7-38
Chapter 8	When a Message Appears7-2Replacing a Toner Cartridge.7-3Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges7-16Storing Toner Cartridges7-18Cleaning the Fixing Roller.7-19Adjusting the Printing Position7-21Checking the Printing Position7-21Adjusting the Printing Position7-23Cleaning the Outside of the Printer7-27Moving the Printer7-30Handling the Printer7-38Troubleshooting
Chapter 8	When a Message Appears7-2Replacing a Toner Cartridge.7-3Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges7-16Storing Toner Cartridges7-18Cleaning the Fixing Roller.7-19Adjusting the Printing Position7-21Checking the Printing Position7-21Adjusting the Printing Position7-23Cleaning the Outside of the Printer7-27Moving the Printer7-30Handling the Printer.7-38TroubleshootingWhen You Have Trouble Printing.8-2
Chapter 8	When a Message Appears7-2Replacing a Toner Cartridge.7-3Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges7-16Storing Toner Cartridges7-18Cleaning the Fixing Roller.7-19Adjusting the Printing Position7-21Checking the Printing Position7-21Adjusting the Printing Position7-23Cleaning the Outside of the Printer7-27Moving the Printer7-30Handling the Printer7-38Troubleshooting8-2When You Have Trouble Printing8-2Paper Jams8-4
Chapter 8	When a Message Appears       7-2         Replacing a Toner Cartridge.       7-3         Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges       7-16         Storing Toner Cartridges       7-18         Cleaning the Fixing Roller       7-19         Adjusting the Printing Position       7-21         Checking the Printing Position       7-21         Adjusting the Printing Position       7-23         Cleaning the Outside of the Printer       7-27         Moving the Printer       7-30         Handling the Printer       7-38         Troubleshooting         When You Have Trouble Printing       8-2         Paper Jams       8-4         Paper Jam Area       8-7

	Message List8-33Service Call Display8-47When You Cannot Obtain Appropriate Printout Results8-49Problems with the Power or Printer Operation8-49Problems with the Printout Results8-53Print Quality Problems8-56Adjusting the Color Balance8-66
Chapter 9	Installing the Optional Accessories
21	Installing the Paper Feeder
Chapter 10	Appendix
	The Lists Common to All the Settings in the Operation Mode10-2
	The Lists Common to Certain Settings in the Operation Mode10-4
	Typeface Samples         10-5           Scalable Fonts (PCL)         10-5           Bitmapped Fonts (PCL)         10-7           Symbol Sets Supported         10-8           Character Code Tables         10-8           ISO Substitution Tables         10-27
	Specifications10-31Hardware Specifications10-31Controller Specifications10-34Software Specifications10-35
	Dimensions of Each Part10-36
	Index

## **Preface**

Thank you for purchasing the Canon Color imageRUNNER LBP5360. Please read this manual thoroughly before operating the printer in order to familiarize yourself with its capabilities, and to make the most of its many functions. After reading this manual, store it in a safe place for future reference.

### **How To Use This Manual**

### Symbols Used in This Manual

The following symbols are used in this manual to explain procedures, restrictions, handling precautions, and instructions that should be observed for safety.

**MARNING** 

Indicates a warning concerning operations that may lead to death or injury to persons if not performed correctly. In order to use the printer

safely, always pay attention to these warnings.

**A** CAUTION

Indicates a caution concerning operations that may lead to injury to persons, or damage to property if not performed correctly. In order to

use the printer safely, always pay attention to these cautions.

IMPORTANT

Indicates operational requirements and restrictions. Be sure to read these items carefully in order to operate the printer correctly, and to

avoid damage to the printer.

NOTE

Indicates a clarification of an operation, or contains additional explanations for a procedure. Reading these notes is highly

recommended.

### **Keys and Buttons Used in This Manual**

The following button names are a few examples of how keys and buttons to be pressed are expressed in this manual:

Keys on the Control Panel: [Key Name]

Example: [Online] [Utility]

• Buttons on Computer Operation Screen: [Button Name]

Example: [OK] [Details]

### **Abbreviations Used in This Manual**

In this manual, product names and model names are abbreviated as follows:

Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system:

Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system:

Windows Me

Microsoft® Windows® 2000 operating system:

Windows 2000

Microsoft® Windows® XP operating system:

Windows XP

Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows Server<sup>™</sup> 2003 operating system: Windows Server 2003

Microsoft® Windows® operating system: Windows
Color imageRUNNER LBP5360: LBP5360

### **Legal Notices**

### **Model Name**

The following names may be provided for the safety regulations in each sales region of this Laser Beam Printer.

110 - 127 V model: L11184A

220 - 240 V model: L11184E

### FCC (Federal Communications Commission)

Color imageRUNNER LBP5360: Model L11184A

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference.

and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



#### ∧ NOTE

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Use of shielded cable is required to comply with class B limits in Subpart B of Part 15 of the FCC Bules.

Do not make any changes or modifications to the equipment unless otherwise specified in this manual. If such changes or modifications should be made, you could be required to stop operation of the equipment.

Canon U.S.A. Inc.
One Canon Plaza, Lake Success, NY 11042, U.S.A.
TEL No. (516) 328-5600



#### **IMPORTANT**

- This Class B digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regulations.
- Cet appareil numérique de la classe B respecte toutes les exigences du Règlement sur le matériel brouilleur du Canada.

### EMC Directive (220 - 240 V model)

"This equipment has been tested in a typical system to comply with the technical requirements of EMC Directive."

• Use of shielded cable is necessary to comply with the technical requirements of EMC Directive.

The product is in conformity with the EMC directive at nominal mains input 230 V, 50 Hz although the rated input of the product is 220 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz.

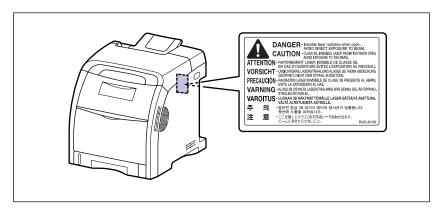
C-tick marking on the rating label means that we declare the product is in conformity with the relevant requirements at nominal mains input 230 V, 50 Hz although the rated input of the product is 220 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz.

### **Laser Safety**

This product complies with 21 CFR Chapter 1 Subchapter J as a Class I laser product under the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) Radiation Performance Standard according to the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968. Also, this product is certified as a Class 1 laser product under IEC60825-1:1993 and EN60825-1:1994. This means that the product does not produce hazardous laser radiation.

Since radiation emitted inside the product is completely confined within protective housings and external covers, the laser beam cannot escape from the machine during any phase of user operation. Do not remove protective housings or external covers, except as directed by the equipment's manuals.

The label shown below is attached to the laser scanner unit inside the machine.



**CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT** LASER KLASSE 1 APPAREIL A RAYONNEMENT LASER DE CLASSE 1 APPARECCHIO LASER DI CLASSE 1 PRODUCTO LASER DE CLASE 1 APARELHO A LASER DE CLASSE 1



#### **▲** CAUTION

Use of controls, adjustments, or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

### International Energy Star-Program



As an ENERGY STAR Partner, Canon Inc. has determined that this product meets the ENERGY STAR Program for energy efficiency.

The International ENERGY STAR Office Equipment Program is an international program that promotes energy saving through the use of computers and other office equipment.

The program backs the development and dissemination of products with functions that effectively reduce energy consumption. It is an open system in which business proprietors can participate voluntarily.

The targeted products are office equipment, such as computers, displays, printers, facsimiles, and copiers. The standards and logos are uniform among participating nations.

### **WEEE Directive**



European Union (and EEA) only.

This symbol indicates that this product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the WEEE Directive (2002/96/EC) and your national law. This product should be handed over to a designated collection point, e.g., on an authorized one-for-one basis when you buy a new similar product or to an authorized collection site for recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment (EEE). Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible negative impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. At the same time, your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources. For more information about where you can drop off your waste equipment for recycling, please contact your local city office, waste authority, approved WEEE scheme or your household waste disposal service. For more information regarding return and recycling of WEEE products, please visit www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EEA: Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein)

### License Notice

This product contains UFST (Universal Font Scaling Technology) under license from Agfa Corporation.

Copyright © 1997-2001 Agfa Monotype Corporation.

### Trademarks

Canon, the Canon Logo, imageRUNNER, LBP, and NetSpot are trademarks of Canon Inc.

Adobe, Adobe Acrobat, and Adobe Reader are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Apple, AppleTalk, Mac OS, Macintosh, and TrueType are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.

PCL and PCL 5 are trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Company.

Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

Windows Server is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Ethernet is a trademark of Xerox Corporation.

Concerning typeface credit, the actual names on a FONTS LIST for this machine may differ from those listed below.

CG and UFST are trademarks of Agfa Monotype Corporation or its affiliated companies and may be registered in some jurisdictions.

Marigold is trademark of AlphaOmega Typography, Inc.

ITC Avant Garde Gothic, ITC Bookman, ITC Lubalin Graph, ITC Mona Lisa, ITC Symbol, ITC Zapf Chancery, and ITC Zapf Dingbats are registered trademarks of International Typeface Corporation.

Clarendon, Helvetica, New Century Schoolbook, Palatino, and Times are trademarks of Linotype-Hell AG and its subsidiaries. Univers is a trademark of Linotype-Hell AG and its subsidiaries and may be registered in some jurisdictions.

Coronet is a registered trademark of Ludlow Type Foundry.

Wingdings is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation.

Albertus, Arial, Century Gothic, and Times New Roman are trademarks of the Monotype Corporation plc., and may be registered in some jurisdictions.

CG Omega is a product of Agfa Corporation and CG Times, based on Times New Roman under license from the Monotype Corporation plc, is a product of Agfa Corporation.

Other product and company names herein may be the trademarks of their respective owners.

### Copyright

Copyright 2006 by Canon Inc. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording, or by any information storage or retrieval system without the prior written permission of Canon Inc.

### **Disclaimers**

The information in this manual is subject to change without notice.

CANON INC. MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WITH REGARD TO THIS MATERIAL, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, EXCEPT AS PROVIDED HEREIN, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, THEREOF, WARRANTIES AS TO MARKETABILITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OF USE OR AGAINST INFRINGEMENT OF ANY PATENT. CANON INC. SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE, OR LOSSES OR EXPENSES RESULTING FROM THE USE OF THIS MATERIAL.

# Legal Limitations on the Usage of Your Product and the Use of Images

Using your product to scan, print or otherwise reproduce certain documents, and the use of such images as scanned, printed or otherwise reproduced by your product, may be prohibited by law and may result in criminal and/or civil liability. A non-exhaustive list of these documents is set forth below. This list is intended to be a guide only. If you are uncertain about the legality of using your product to scan, print or otherwise reproduce any particular document, and/or of the use of the images scanned, printed or otherwise reproduced, you should consult in advance with your legal advisor for guidance.

- · Paper Money
- Money Orders
- · Certificates of Deposit
- Postage Stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- · Identifying Badges or Insignias
- Selective Service or Draft Papers
- Checks or Drafts Issued by Governmental Agencies
- Motor Vehicle Licenses and Certificates of Title

- Travelers Checks
- Food Stamps
- Passports
- · Immigration Papers
- Internal Revenue Stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Bonds or Other Certificates of Indebtedness
- Stock Certificates
- Copyrighted Works/Works of Art without Permission of Copyright Owner



### **Important Safety Instructions**

Please read these "Important Safety Instructions" thoroughly before operating the printer. As these instructions are intended to prevent injury to the user or other persons or destruction of property, always pay attention to these instructions. Also, since it may result in unexpected accidents or injuries, do not perform any operation unless otherwise specified in the manual. Improper operation or use of this machine could result in personal injury and/or damage requiring extensive repair that may not be covered under your Limited Warranty.

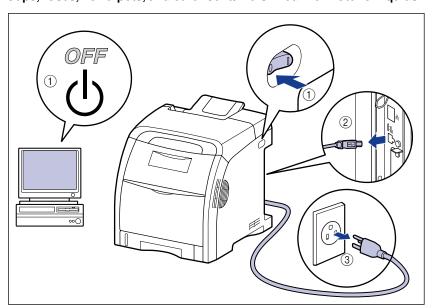
### Installation



#### WARNING

- Do not install the printer near alcohol, paint thinner, or other flammable substances. If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the printer, it may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- · Do not place the following items on the printer. If these items come into contact with a high-voltage area inside the printer, this may result in a fire or electrical shock. If these items are dropped or slipped inside the printer, immediately turn OFF the power switch (1) and disconnect the USB cable (2) if it is connected. Then, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet (3) and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.
  - Necklaces and other metal objects

- Cups, vases, flowerpots, and other containers filled with water or liquids



### **A** CAUTION

- Do not install the printer in unstable locations, such as unsteady platforms or inclined floors, or in locations subject to excessive vibrations, as this may cause the printer to fall or tip over, resulting in personal injury.
- Never block the ventilation slots on the printer. The ventilation slots are provided for proper ventilation of working parts inside the printer. Never place the printer on a soft surface, such as a sofa or rug. Blocking the ventilation slots can cause the printer to overheat, resulting in a fire.
- Do not install the printer in the following locations, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
  - A damp or dusty location
  - A location exposed to smoke and steam such as cookeries and humidifiers
  - A location exposed to rain or snow
  - A location near water faucets or water
  - A location exposed to direct sunlight
  - A location subject to high temperatures
  - A location near open flames
- When installing the printer, gently lower the printer onto the floor or other machine to avoid catching your hands, as this may result in personal injury.
- When connecting the interface cable, connect it properly following the instructions in this manual. If not connected properly, this may result in malfunction or electrical shock.
- When moving the printer, follow the instructions in this manual to hold it correctly.
   Failure to do so may cause you to drop the printer, resulting in personal injury. (See "Moving the Printer," on p. 7-30)

### **Power Supply**

#### **▲** WARNING

- · Do not damage or modify the power cord. Also, do not place heavy objects on the power cord, or pull on or excessively bend it, as this could cause electrical damage and result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Keep the power cord away from a heat source; failure to do this may cause the power cord coating to melt, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not plug or unplug the power plug with wet hands, as this may result in electrical shock.
- Do not plug the power cord to a multiplug power strip, as this may cause a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not bundle up or tie the power cord in a knot, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Insert the power plug completely into the AC power outlet, as failure to do so may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not use power cords other than the power cord provided, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- As a general rule, do not use extension cords or plug extension cords to a multiple power strip. If extension cords must be used or plugged to a multiple power strip, however, use them observing the following points on user's own authority. If you use extension cords improperly, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not connect one extension cord to another.
- Make sure that the voltage of the power plug is the one indicated in the rating label (attached on the back of the printer) when you use the printer.
- Use an extension cord that allows the current value greater than the necessary one indicated in the rating label (attached on the back of the printer).
- When you use an extension cord, untie the cord binding, and insert the power plug completely into the extension cord outlet to ensure a firm connection between the power cord and the extension cord.
- Periodically check that the extension cord is not overheated.

#### **▲** CAUTION

- · Do not use power supplies with voltages other than those specified herein, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- · Always grasp the plug when unplugging the power cord. Pulling on the power cord may expose or snap the core wire, or otherwise damage the power cord. If the power cord is damaged, this could cause current to leak, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.
- Leave sufficient space around the power plug so that it can be unplugged easily. If objects are placed around the power plug, you will be unable to unplug it in an emergency.

### Handling

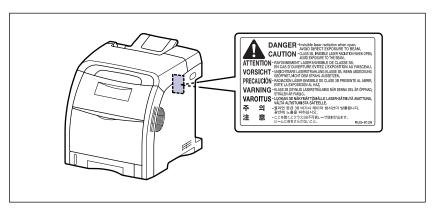
#### WARNING

- · Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the printer. There are high-temperature and high-voltage components inside the printer which may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Electrical equipment can be hazardous if not used properly. To avoid injury, do not allow children access to the interior of any electrical product and do not let them touch any electrical contacts or gears that are exposed.
- · If the printer makes strange noises, or emits smoke, heat or unusual smells, immediately turn OFF the printer and computer, and disconnect the USB cable if it is connected. Then, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet and contact your local authorized Canon dealer. Otherwise, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not use highly flammable sprays near the printer. If gas from these sprays comes into contact with the electrical components inside the printer, it may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Always turn OFF the printer and computer, and disconnect the interface cables when moving the printer. Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.
- · Do not drop paper clips, staples, or other metal objects inside the printer. Also, do not spill water, liquids, or flammable substances (alcohol, benzene, paint thinner, etc.) inside the printer. If these items come into contact with a high-voltage area inside the printer, this may result in a fire or electrical shock. If these items are dropped or slipped inside the printer, immediately turn OFF the printer and computer, and disconnect the USB cable if it is connected. Then, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.
- · When plugging or unplugging the USB cable when the power plug is plugged in an AC power outlet, do not touch the metal part of the connector, as this may result in electrical shock.

#### **▲** CAUTION

- · Do not place heavy objects on the printer, as they may tip over or fall resulting in personal injury.
- Be careful when handling the main board, expansion board, and RAM. Touching the edges or a sharp portion of the main board, expansion board, RAM, ROM may result in personal injury.
- Turn OFF the power switch for safety when the printer will not be used for a long period of time such as overnight. Also, turn OFF the power switch on the right of the printer and unplug the power plug for safety when the printer will not be used for an extended period of time such as during consecutive holidays.
- Keep your hands or clothing away from the roller in the output area. Even if the printer is not printing, sudden rotation of the roller may catch your hands or clothing, resulting in personal injury.

- The laser beam can be harmful to human bodies. Since radiation emitted inside the printer is completely confined within protective housings and external covers, the laser beam cannot escape from the printer during any phase of user operation. Read the following remarks and instructions for safety.
  - Never open covers other than those instructed in this manual.
  - Do not remove the caution label attached to the cover of the laser scanner unit.



- If the laser beam escapes from the printer, exposure may cause serious damage to your eyes.

### Maintenance and Inspections

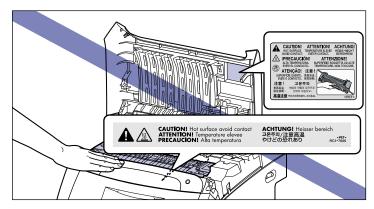


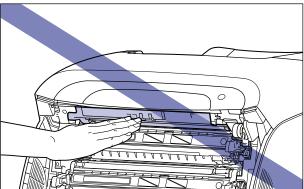
#### **⚠** WARNING

- · When cleaning the printer, turn OFF the printer and computer, remove the USB cable, and then unplug the power plug. Failure to observe these steps may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet regularly, and clean the area around the base of the power plug's metal pins and the AC power outlet with a dry cloth to ensure that all dust and grime is removed. If the power plug is plugged for a long period of time in a damp, dusty, or smoky location, dust can build up around the power plug and become damp. This may cause a short circuit and result in a fire.
- Clean the printer using a slightly dampened cloth with water or a mild detergent diluted with water. Do not use alcohol, benzene, paint thinner, or other flammable substances. If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the printer, it may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- There are some areas inside the printer which are subject to high-voltages. When removing jammed paper or when inspecting the inside of the printer, do not allow necklaces, bracelets, or other metal objects to touch the inside of the printer, as this may result in burns or electrical shock.
- Do not throw a used toner cartridge into open flames, as this may cause the toner remaining inside the cartridge to ignite, resulting in burns or a fire.

#### **A** CAUTION

- Never attempt to service this printer yourself, except as explained in this manual.
   There are no user serviceable parts inside the printer. Adjust only those controls that are covered in the operating instructions. Improper adjustment could result in personal injury and/or damage requiring extensive repair that may not be covered under your Limited Warranty.
- The fixing unit and its surroundings inside the printer become hot during use. When
  removing jammed paper or when inspecting the inside of the printer, do not touch the
  fixing unit and its surroundings, as doing so may result in burns or electrical shock.





- When removing jammed paper or replacing a toner cartridge, take care not to allow the toner to come into contact with your hands or clothing, as this will dirty your hands or clothing. If they become dirty, wash them immediately with cold water.
   Washing with warm water will set the toner and make it impossible to remove the toner stains.
- When removing paper jammed inside the printer, remove the jammed paper gently to
  prevent the toner on the paper from scattering and getting into your eyes or mouth. If
  the toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and
  immediately consult a physician.
- When loading paper or removing jammed paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

· When removing a used toner cartridge from the toner cartridge slot, remove the cartridge carefully to prevent the toner from scattering and getting into your eyes or mouth. If the toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and immediately consult a physician.

### **Consumables**



#### **▲** WARNING

- Do not throw a used toner cartridge into open flames, as this may cause toner remaining inside the cartridge to ignite and result in burns or a fire.
- · Do not store a toner cartridge or copy paper in places exposed to open flames, as this may cause the toner or paper to ignite and result in burns or a fire.



#### **A** CAUTION

Keep toner cartridges and other consumables out of the reach of small children. If these items are ingested, consult a physician immediately.

# **Before You Start**



This chapter describes the major features and basic functions of this printer.

Features and Benefits	1-2
Jser Manual CD-ROM Menu         System Requirements         Using The CD-ROM Menu	1-5
Parts and Their Functions. Printer Control Panel Display	1-7 1-10
Optional Accessories         Paper Feeder         Expansion RAM         Hard Disk	1-13 1-14

### **Features** and Benefits

This section describes the major features.

#### ■ High Quality Letter Full Color Print

This printer is fitted with a Letter full color laser printer engine. Moreover, 600dpi/multi-value data process resolution delivers high quality full-color printing on Letter size paper.

#### **■** High Speed Printing

Adoption of high-speed CPU and new-type PDL has increases the speed of the controller processing. Moreover, the four development drums have shortened the time of color printing, which used to require four times longer time than when printing in black and white, to as short as printing in black and white (printing 21 sheets of paper per minute).

#### **■** Easy Maintenance

The toner cartridges (Canon Genuine Cartridges) of four colors (Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and Black) in which toner and drum are integrated relieve you from toner replenishment and drum replacement that tend to stain your hands, achieving easy routine maintenance that only requires replacement of these toner cartridges. Furthermore, because the cover is located on the front, you can easily replace the toner cartridges and remove paper jammed inside the printer. This feature is achieved by centralizing all the operations (feeding paper, development, and transferring and fixing toner) at the front of the printer and simplifying the paper transport path.

### ■ Paper Handling

In addition to the standard multi-purpose tray and universal cassette, the optional 500-sheet paper feeder is available, enabling the continuous automatic feeding of up to 850 sheets of paper (20.0 lb Bond (80 g/m²)) of 3 different sizes. Equipped with the duplex unit as standard, the printer can perform automatic 2-sided printing on the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray or paper cassette. By doing so, you can save paper and make the file space more efficient.

### ■ User-Friendly Color Control

The user interface with color matrixes delivers intuitive and easy to use color tone adjustment. The sample print function that outputs the samples of images after adjustment on a sheet of paper allows you to easily and rightly check the colors that you want to use.

The auto color function that automatically detects color pages frees you from having to switch between the black-and-white mode and color mode. As a matter of course, LBP5360 is equipped with ColorGear, Canon's original color management system that recreates the colors as you expect. This system achieves the user-friendly control of color matching that corrects color by each element of text, photographs, and pictures that make up a document.

#### ■ Network Printer

Equipped with a 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX print server as standard. Because LBP5360 compatible with the TCP/IP, AppleTalk, and SMB protocols, you can instantly use this printer as a network printer that supports various kinds of host/operating system environments. Also the high-speed DMA transfer that directly transfers data to the printer memory and automatic interface switch function enable fine printing process in a network environment.



For details on the operating systems that the print server equipped with this printer support and the configuration procedures, see "Network Guide".

#### ■ Well-developed Security Functions

By installing an optional hard disk, you can use the "Secured Print" function that requires entering a password on printing and the "Encrypted Secured Print" function in which the security for data communication is reinforced. The "Hard Disk Data All Erase" function that completely erases all the data in the hard disk and the capability of using SSL for communication by the Remote UI achieve a safer printing environment.



For details on software required for printing encrypted secured print jobs, see "Driver Guide". For the procedure for installing the software, see Readme.txt in "Encrypted Secured Print Driver Add-in For Client PC", the CD-ROM supplied with the optional hard disk.

#### ■ Software Compatibility and Language Switching

The printer supports Hewlett-Packard's PCL 5c printer language, which enables the printer to work with a wide variety of software applications supporting PCL. This printer also supports UFR II. UFR II. a printing system compatible with the latest operating systems, distributes the printing process to a computer and printer, achieving a high-speed print output. Also, a high-speed print output is enabled without expanding the printer memory.

### ■ Energy Saving

The on-demand fusing technology of the printer provides improved energy efficiency.

Because of this power saving feature, the printer meets the guidelines for the International Energy Star Program.

#### ■ Interface Features

The printer uses a USB port that supports Microsoft Plug & Play technology. It also comes with a print server as standard, being used as a network printer for Ethernet.

#### ■ Typefaces

The printer comes with 80 scalable typefaces in 27 typeface families (Agfa 80 MicroType fonts), all compatible with application software supporting Microsoft Windows. In addition, 10 bitmapped typefaces of the Line Printer family are also included. The printer uses the Universal Font Scaling Technology (UFST) for outline fonts, provided under license from Agfa Monotype Corporation. 31 TrueType screen fonts are also included along with Canon Font Manager for easy management of installed fonts in Microsoft Windows 98/Me and Windows 2000/XP.

#### ■ Printer Drivers and Utilities

LBP5360 is provided with the printer driver for PCL 5c that supports Windows 98/Me/ 2000/XP/Server 2003 and UFR II Printer Driver that supports Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003 and Mac OS X, allowing you to print from a various kinds of system environment.

Also, NetSpot Device Installer supplied with LBP5360 simplifies the management and settings of the printer on a network environment.

### **IMPORTANT**

The supplied CD-ROM does not include the printer driver for Macintosh. Download the printer driver for Macintosh that supports this printer from the Canon website. If you cannot find the printer driver for Macintosh that supports this printer on the Canon website, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

#### ■ Remote UI Support

The printer supports a Remote UI function that allows you to control or monitor the status of the printer from a computer. (See Remote UI Guide.)

### **User Manual CD-ROM Menu**

The User Manual CD-ROM Menu is software that enables you to select and view PDF Manuals included on the CD-ROM via your computer screen. Follow the instructions below to use the User Manual CD-ROM Menu.

### **System Requirements**

The User Manual CD-ROM Menu can be used in the following system environments.

	Windows	Macintosh	
Operating System	Windows 98 Windows Me Windows 2000 (Service Pack 3 or later) Windows XP (Service Pack 1a or later) Windows Server 2003	Mac OS X	
Memory	The memory required to run the above operating systems.		
Computer	A computer that can run the above operating systems.		
Display	A resolution of 1024 x 768 pixels or higher.		



#### **IMPORTANT**

Depending on the configuration of your computer, some functions may not operate correctly. If the PDF manual does not open from the CD-ROM Menu, open the PDF file directly from the [english] folder in the [Manuals] folder on the User Manual CD-ROM.

### **Using The CD-ROM Menu**

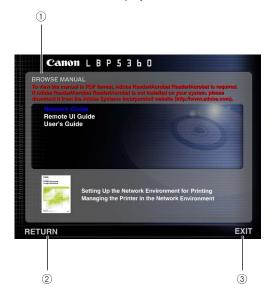
This section describes how to use the CD-ROM Menu. When you insert the User Manual CD-ROM provided into the CD-ROM drive, the Language Selection screen is displayed. Clicking a language on this screen displays the following menu.

(The sample screen shot shown here is for Windows users.)



#### NOTE

For Macintosh users, double-click the [START] icon to start the CD-ROM Menu. The Language Selection screen is displayed.



#### **(1) BROWSE MANUAL**

You can read any of the listed guides by clicking on the desired guide. After clicking on the desired guide, Acrobat Reader starts, and the PDF manual is displayed.

#### ② RETURN

Return to the Language Selection screen.

#### ③ EXIT

Exit the CD-ROM menu.

### **Parts** and Their Functions

This printer consists of components that perform various functions. This section describes the name and function of each part in order for you to use this printer properly to make full use of its functions.

### **Printer**

The following are the parts and functions of the printer unit.

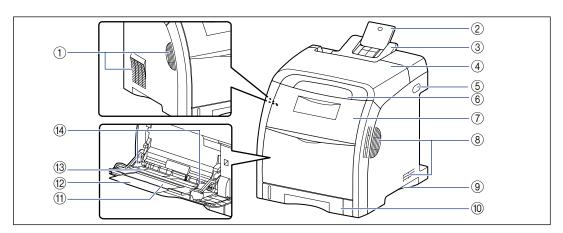


#### A CAUTION

Never block the ventilation slots on the printer. The ventilation slots are provided for proper ventilation of working parts inside the printer. Blocking the ventilation slots can cause the printer to overheat, resulting in a fire.

#### Front View

The following are the parts on the front side of the printer and their functions.



#### (1) Ventilation Slots

Ventilate air to cool the insides of the printer.

#### ② Auxiliary Tray (Output Tray)

Pulled out to prevent the paper from hanging out of the output tray when outputting Legal size paper to the output tray.

#### ③ Output Tray

Outputs paper with the printed side facing down. (See p. 4-15)

#### (4) Top Cover

Opened when removing jammed paper. (See p. 8-4)

#### (5) Power Switch

Turns the power of the printer ON/OFF. (See p. 2-33)

#### 6 Control Panel

Displays the printer status and allows you to specify the settings. (See p. 1-10)

#### (7) Front Cover

Opened when replacing a toner cartridge or removing jammed paper. (See p. 7-2)

#### ® Ventilation Slots

Ventilate air to cool the insides of the printer.

#### 

Hold these handles when moving the printer. (See p. 7-30)

#### 10 Paper Cassette

Can be loaded with up to 250 sheets of plain paper (20.0 lb Bond (80 g/m²)). (See p. 4-17)

#### (11) Auxiliary Tray (Multi-purpose Tray)

Be sure to pull out the auxiliary tray when loading paper in the multi-purpose tray.

#### (12) Tray Extension

Opened to prevent the paper from hanging out of the multi-purpose tray when loading long-size paper, such as Letter.

#### **13 Multi-purpose Tray**

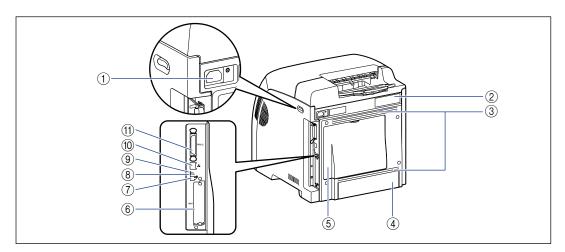
Load paper when feeding the paper from the multi-purpose tray. (See p. 4-35)

#### (4) Paper Guides

Adjust the position of the paper guides to the width of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray. You can load paper up to the load limit marks on this tray.

#### Rear View

The following are the parts on the rear side of the printer and their functions.



#### 1) Power Socket

Connect the supplied power cord to this socket.

#### ② Rating Label

The serial number (Serial No.) for printer identification is indicated on this label. The number is required for receiving service or repairs. The current value indicated in this rating label shows the average power current consumption.

#### ③ Ventilation Slots

Ventilate air to cool the insides of the printer.

#### (4) Cassette Protective Cover

Prevents dirt and dust from entering the paper cassette. When Legal size paper is loaded in the paper cassette, the cassette protective cover rises automatically.

#### (5) Rear Cover

Opened when installing an optional RAM module or hard disk.

#### Expansion Slot

An optional hard disk is installed in this slot. (See p. 9-22)

#### 7 USB Connector

Connected to the USB cable. Connect the USB cable to this connector when the computer is equipped with a USB interface.

#### (8) 100 Indicator (Green)

Comes on when the printer is connected to a network by 100BASE-TX.

#### 9 10 Indicator (Green)

Comes on when the printer is connected to a network by 10BASE-T.

#### Connects to a 10BASE

① LAN Connector

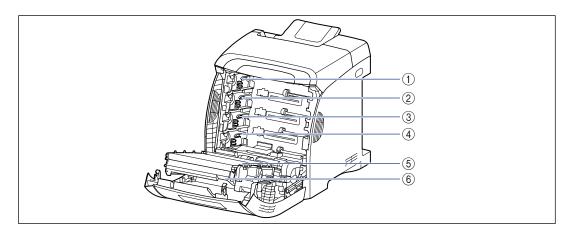
Connects to a 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX LAN cable.

#### (1) Parallel Connector

Connected to the IEEE1284-compatible 8-bit parallel interface cable. Connect the parallel interface cable when the printer port of the computer supports a parallel interface.

#### Inner View

The following are the parts inside the printer and their functions.



#### ① K (Black) Toner Cartridge Slot

The K (black) toner cartridge is installed in this slot.

#### (2) Y (Yellow) Toner Cartridge Slot

The Y (yellow) toner cartridge is installed in this slot.

#### (3) C (Cyan) Toner Cartridge Slot

The C (cyan) toner cartridge is installed in this slot.

#### (4) M (Magenta) Toner Cartridge Slot

The M (magenta) toner cartridge is installed in this slot.

#### **5** ETB (Electro static Transfer Belt) Unit

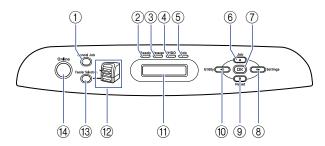
Transfers toner of four colors onto paper while transporting it.

#### 6 Duplex Unit

Used when performing 2-sided printing.

# **Control Panel**

The control panel on the top of the printer allows you to check the printer status and use the printer functions.



### ① [Cancel Job] Key

On offline:

Cancels the job when the Job indicator is on or blinking. Does not function when the Job indicator is off.

On online:

Cancels the job when the Job indicator is on or blinking. Does not function when the Job indicator is

### ② Ready Indicator (Green)

On:

The printer is ready to print. (If the printer has entered Power Save Mode when it is online, only the Ready indicator (green) is on, and all the other indicators are off.)

Blinking:

The printer is performing a self-diagnostic test. The printer is in a warm-up state.

Off:

The printer cannot print.

### (3) Message Indicator (Orange)

On:

The printer cannot print because a problem has occurred in the printer. (If the printer has entered Power Save Mode when it is offline, only the Message indicator (orange) is on, and all the other indicators are off.)

Off:

The printer is in a normal state.

### (4) HDD Indicator (Green)

On:

Data is being read from the hard disk or being written to the hard disk.

Off:

Data is not being read from the hard disk or being written to the hard disk.

### (5) Job Indicator (Green)

On

The printer is receiving print data, or any print data remains in the printer memory.

Blinking:

The printer is processing print data.

Off:

There is no print data in the printer memory.

### ⑥ [Job] ( ▲ ) Key

On offline:

Does not function when the printer is offline.

On online:

Displays the JOB menu.

On menu operation:

Goes back to the previous menu (Goes back up the hierarchy).

### ① [OK] Key

On offline:

Does not function when the printer is offline.

On online:

Does not function when the printer is online.

On menu operation:

Goes to the next menu (Goes down the hierarchy). In a lowest menu level (When a setting value is displayed), determines the setting.

### ® [Settings] (►) Key

On offline:

Displays the SETUP menu.

On online:

Displays the SETUP menu. However, the [User Maintenance Menul options cannot be specified when the printer is online.

On menu operation:

Displays the next right item in the menu. Increases the setting value.

### ⑨ [Reset] ( ▼ ) Key

On offline:

Displays the RESET menu.

On online:

Displays the RESET menu.

On menu operation:

Goes to the next menu (Goes down the hierarchy). In a lowest menu level (When a setting value is displayed), determines the setting.

### (iii) [Utility] ( ◀ ) Key

On offline:

Does not function when the printer is offline.

On online:

Displays the UTILITY menu.

On menu operation:

Displays the next left item in the menu. Decreases the setting value.

### (f) Display

Displays the printer status, messages, the settings and setting values of the menu functions. (See p. 1-12)

#### (2) Paper Source Indicators (Green)

The indicator for the currently selected paper source comes on.

Blinking:

There is no paper in the currently selected paper source, or the paper cassette is not set. For the multi-purpose tray, the indicator comes on even when no paper is loaded.

Off:

No paper source is selected. No paper cassette including the optional one or paper feeder is set.

#### (3) [Feeder Selection] Key

On offline:

Displays the SELECT FEEDER menu.

On online:

Displays the SELECT FEEDER menu.

On menu operation:

Does not function.

#### (4) [Online] Key/Online Indicator (Green)

Turns on (online)/off (offline) the connection to the computer.

This key also has the function that, when an error has occurred, releases the printer from the error temporarily and continues the paused job. However, depending on the error, you may not be able to cancel it out.

The Online indicator under the Online key indicates the following printer status with its status.

Online (The printer can receive print data from the computer.)

Off:

Offline (The printer cannot receive print data from the computer.)

However, if the printer has entered Power Save Mode, the Online indicator is off even when the printer is online. (See p. 3-5)

# Display

The display on the printer's control panel is shown as the following. It displays the printer status, messages, items and settings of the menu functions.

When the printer is ready to print



When operating the printer using the control panel



### 1 Status/Operation Field

Displays the printer status and operation mode.

### 2 Paper Source/Paper Size Field

Displays the size of paper in the currently selected paper source using an abbreviation. The names of the following paper sizes are indicated by an abbreviation. (Legal: LG, Letter: LT, Executive: EX, Statement: ST, Foolscap: FC, Envelope DL: DL, Envelope COM10: CO, Envelope C5: EC5, Envelope Monarch: MO, Envelope B5: EB5, Index Card: IC, Custom Size: 80 to 99, Custom Size R: 80R to 99R, Free/Mixed Sizes: FR)

# **Optional Accessories**

The following optional accessories are available in order to use this printer to its full extent. Purchase them to fulfill your needs. For the optional accessories, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

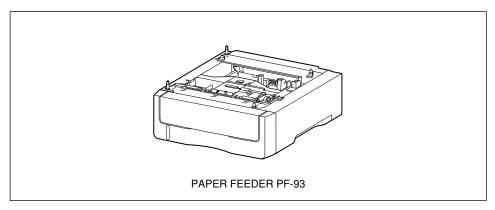
# Paper Feeder

This printer is supplied with 2 paper sources: the paper cassette and multi-purpose tray. By installing the optional paper feeder, up to 3 paper sources can be used.

PAPER FEEDER PF-93 consists of a paper feeder and paper cassette.

The paper cassette can be loaded with up to approximately 500 sheets of plain paper (20.0 lb Bond (80 g/m²)) at sizes of A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Foolscap, 16K, and custom size paper at the following sizes.

- When loading paper in portrait orientation: Width 5.83 to 8.50 in. (148.0 to 215.9 mm); Length 8.27 to 14.00 in. (210.0 to 355.6 mm)
- When loading paper in landscape orientation (Only when UFR II Printer Driver is used): Width 8.27 to 8.50 in. (210.0 to 215.9 mm); Length 8.27 to 8.50 in. (210.0 to 215.9 mm)



# **Expansion RAM**

Expansion RAM is an extended memory that expands the amount of memory. This printer comes with 128 MB of memory. One expansion RAM module can be added, and the memory capacity can be expanded up to a maximum of 384 MB.

Total RAM Capacity (Expanded RAM Capacity)	Guaranteed Paper Size for Printing	
128 (Standard)	Letter x 2	
256 (+ 128 MB)	Letter x 4	
384 (+ 256 MB)	Letter x 6	

(+ XX MB) in the table indicates the capacity of the optional expansion RAM that is required in addition to the standard RAM.

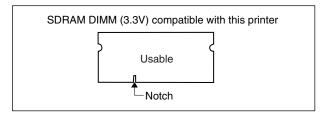
The values in the Guaranteed Paper Size for Printing column in the table are those when performing 1-sided color printing with GRADATION LEVEL set to HIGH 1. The paper size is based on Letter size. The paper sizes (dimensions) are Legal, Foolscap, A4, Letter, 16K, Executive, B5, Envelope B5, Envelope C5, A5, Statement, Envelope COM10, Envelope DL, Envelope Monarch, and Index Card in descending dimension order.

The guaranteed paper sizes for printing vary depending on the settings for GRADATION LEVEL, 2-SIDED PRINT, and COLOR MODE on printing. Calculate the sizes based on the paper sizes in the table above.

Item	Setting Value	Scale Factor
GRADATION LEVEL	HIGH 1	100 %
GIVE/IIION ELVEE	HIGH 2	50 %
2-SIDED PRINT.	OFF	100 %
	ON	50 %
COLOR MODE	COLOR	100 %
OCCOTTWODE	BLACK & WHITE	400 %

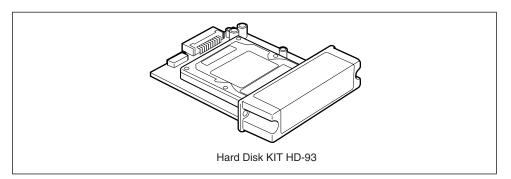


Be sure to use a 3.3V SDRAM DIMM compatible with this printer as the expansion RAM module. It is recommended that you should use Canon Expansion RAM ER-128 or ER-256 as the expansion RAM.



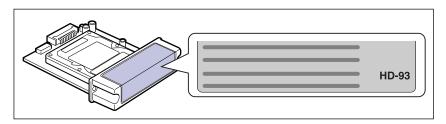
# **Hard Disk**

You can use a hard disk that can be built in the printer to save the received print jobs temporarily. By installing the hard disk, you can use various functions such as print job spooling, encrypted secured print, secured print, electronic sort, and RIP Once.



# IMPORTANT

• A hard disk that can be installed in this printer is the one in which "HD-93" is indicated on its label. If you use a hard disk in which "HD-93" is not indicated on its label, the printer does not operate properly.



 When you are using a hard disk, set MODE TIMEOUT in the SETUP menu to a setting other than OFF. It is recommended that you should specify the default setting, "15 seconds".

# **Installing the Printer**



This chapter describes the procedure from taking this printer out of the package to installing the printer.

Installation Procedure	-2
Installation Site	-3
Installation Environment	-3
Installation Space	-5
Precautions for Handling	-7
Confirming the Package Contents	-8
$ Carrying \ the \ Printer \ to \ the \ Installation \ Site \ and \ Removing \ the \ Packing \ Materials \ on \ the \ Outside \ of \ the \ Printer \ \dots 2-the \ Printer \ description \ $	-9
Installing the Toner Cartridges	15
Loading Paper2-2	25
Connecting the Cables	26
Connecting the Power Cord	26
Connecting to a Computer2-2	28
Turning the Printer ON and Checking the Printer Operation2-3	33
Turning the Printer ON	33
Registering a Paper Size2-3	34
Specifying a Paper Type	35
Checking the Operations with Configuration Page Print	35
When the Printer Does Not Operate Properly2-3	38
Changing the Language Used in the Display2-3	39
Turning the Printer OFF	40

# **Installation Procedure**

According to your installation condition, perform the relevant procedure. When you do not install the optional accessories, skip the procedures indicated with (Optional).

1	Installing the Paper Feeder (See p. 9-2)	(Optional)
2	Installing the Printer Unit (See p. 2-9)	
3	Installing the Toner Cartridges (See p. 2-15)	
4	Loading Paper (See p. 4-19, p. 4-36)	
5	Installing RAM (See p. 9-15) Installing a Hard Disk (See p. 9-22)	(Optional)
6	Connecting the Power Cord (See p. 2-26)	

Connecting the Printer Unit and a Computer (See p. 2-28)

# **Installation Site**

In order to use this printer in a safe and comfortable manner, install the printer in a place that fulfills "Temperature/Humidity Conditions", "Power Supply Requirements", and "Installation Requirements" described in "Installation Environment".



#### **IMPORTANT**

Before installing the printer, be sure to read "Important Safety Instructions," on p. xvii.

# Installation Environment

Select an installation site for this printer in view of the following environmental conditions.

## Temperature/Humidity Conditions

Use the printer in a location where the temperature and humidity are in the following ranges.

- Ambient temperature: 50 to 86 °F (10 to 30 °C)
- Ambient humidity: 10 to 80 % RH (no condensation)



#### IMPORTANT

- Water droplets (condensation) may form inside the printer under the following circumstances. Leave the printer for two hours or more to adjust the surrounding temperature and humidity before using it.
- When the room where the printer is installed is heated rapidly
- When the printer is moved from a cool or dry location to a hot or humid location
- If water droplets form inside the printer, the paper transport path will not function properly, and this may result in paper jams or poor print quality.

### ■ To customers using an ultrasonic humidifier

If you use an ultrasonic humidifier in conjunction with tap water or well water, impurities in the water will be dispersed through the air. These can be trapped inside the printer, causing degradations in printing quality. When you are using these humidifiers, it is therefore recommended that you use purified water or other water that is free of impurities.

## **Power Supply Requirements**

The maximum power consumption of this printer is 1280 W\* or less. Electrical noise or a dramatic drop in mains voltage may cause the printer to operate incorrectly or lose data, and can also cause the computer to fail.

\* The instantaneous peak on startup when all the optional accessories are installed in the printer shall not be counted.

Use power supplies rated for voltages in the following ranges.

• 100 - 127 V 50/60 Hz



#### **IMPORTANT**

- An AC power outlet should be used exclusively for the printer. Any other sockets of the AC power outlet should not be used.
- Do not plug the power plug into the auxiliary outlet on a computer.
- Do not plug the power plug of the printer and that of machinery which consumes a large amount of electricity or generates electrical noise, such as a copy machine, air conditioner, or shredder, into the same AC power outlet.

### **Installation Requirements**

Install the printer in the following locations.

- · A location where sufficient space can be secured
- A well-ventilated room
- · A flat, even surface
- A sturdy platform that can easily support the weight of the printer and optional accessories



### WARNING

Do not install the printer near alcohol, paint thinner, or other flammable substances. If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the printer, it may result in a fire or electrical shock.



### CAUTION

- Do not install the printer in the following locations, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- A damp or dusty location
- A location exposed to smoke and steam such as cookeries and humidifiers
- A location exposed to rain or snow
- A location near water faucets or water
- A location exposed to direct sunlight
- A location subject to high temperatures
- A location near open flames

 Do not install the printer in unstable locations, such as unsteady platforms or inclined floors, or in locations subject to excessive vibrations, as this may cause the printer to fall or tip over, resulting in personal injury.



Do not install the printer in the following locations, as this may result in damage to the printer.

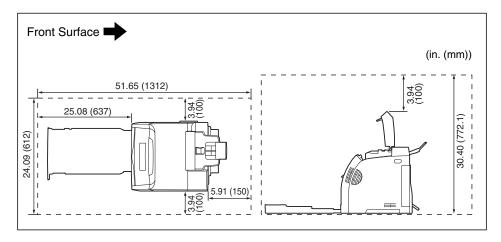
- An environment where the temperature and/or humidity can change dramatically, or where condensation occurs
- A poorly ventilated room
- A location near products that generate magnetic waves or electromagnetic waves
- In rooms such as laboratories where chemical reactions occur
- A place where salt content, corrosive gases such as ammonia, or toxic gases are contained
- A platform that may warp from the weight of the printer and optional accessories, or the printer is liable to sink (such as a carpet or mat)

# **Installation Space**

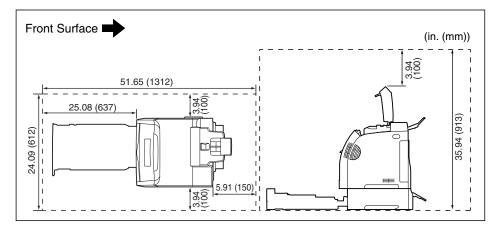
Select an installation location where you can secure the following amounts of free space around the printer, and a surface that can support the weight of the printer. The dimensions of the space required around the components and the positions of the feet are as follows.

# Required Peripheral Space

#### ■ Standard state

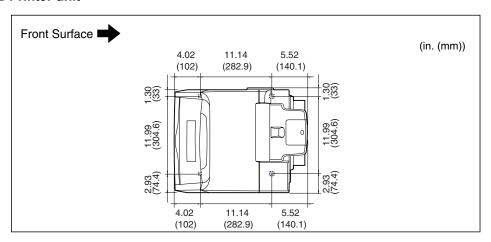


### ■ State with the paper feeder installed



### **Foot Positions**

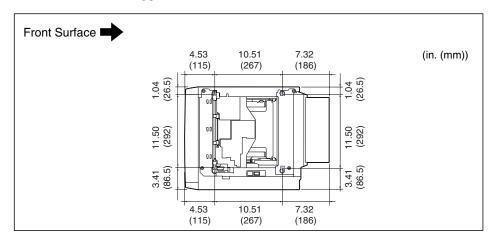
### ■ Printer unit



### NOTE

The front feet are 0.12 in. (3 mm) high and their top surface is 0.47 in. (12 mm) square. The rear feet are 0.13 in. (3.2 mm) high and their top surface is 0.47 in. (12 mm) in diameter.

#### ■ PAPER FEEDER PF-93





The front feet are 0.12 in. (3 mm) high and their top surface is 0.47 in. (12 mm) square. The rear feet are 0.14 in. (3.5 mm) high and their top surface is 0.63 in. (16 mm) x 0.67 in. (17 mm) rectangular.

# **Precautions for Handling**



### A CAUTION

If an error should occurred to the hard disk in the printer unit, the received, recorded, and saved data may be deleted. It is recommended not to record or save important data on the hard disk. Canon assumes no responsibility whatsoever for any damages or losses arising from data loss by the customers.

# **Confirming the Package Contents**

Make sure that all the following items are contained in the package before installing the printer. If any item is missing or damaged, please contact your local authorized Canon dealer.





(The paper cassette and toner cartridges are already installed.)







Output tray



- ☐ User Software CD-ROM
  - Printer Driver
  - USB class driver
  - Driver Guide



- ☐ User Manual CD-ROM
  - Manuals
    - User's Guide
    - Remote UI Guide
    - Network Guide
  - Canon Font Manager



#### **IMPORTANT**

The supplied CD-ROM does not include the printer driver for Macintosh. Download the printer driver for Macintosh that supports this printer from the Canon website. If you cannot find the printer driver for Macintosh that supports this printer on the Canon website, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.



#### NOTE

 This printer does not come with an interface cable. Have an appropriate one available for the computer you are using or the connecting method. Use a USB cable with the following symbol.



Canon Font Manager is included in the [Canonfm] folder on the User Manual CD-ROM.

# Carrying the Printer to the Installation Site and Removing the Packing Materials on the Outside of the Printer

After securing the installation site, carry the printer to the installation site and remove the packing materials on the outside of the printer. When carrying the printer, carry it after pulling out the paper cassette.



### CAUTION

Do not carry the printer with the paper cassette attached. If you do so, the paper cassette may drop resulting in personal injury.



#### **IMPORTANT**

- When installing the optional paper feeder, place it on the installation site before carrying the printer unit to the site. For details on installing the paper feeder, see "Installing the Paper Feeder," on p. 9-2.
- Secure sufficient space around the printer at the installation site so that you can install the optional accessories and connect cables.
- The removed packing materials are required when transporting the printer for relocation or maintenance. Keep them where they will not get lost.



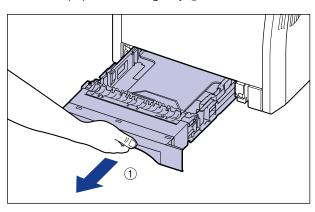
### NOTE

The packing materials may be changed in form or position to be placed, or may be added or removed without notice.

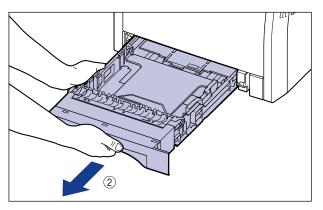


# Pull out the paper cassette.

Pull out the paper cassette gently 1.

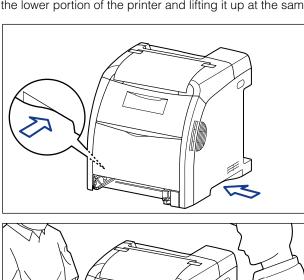


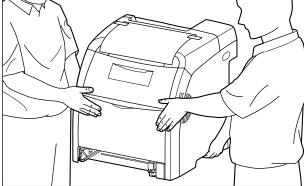
While holding the paper cassette with both hands, remove it from the printer unit as shown in the figure 2.



# 2 Carry the printer unit to the installation site.

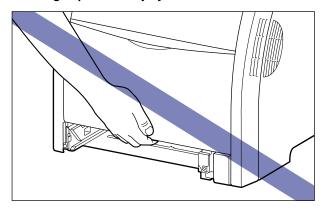
Carry the printer with 2 or more people by holding the center of the lift handles on the lower portion of the printer and lifting it up at the same time.

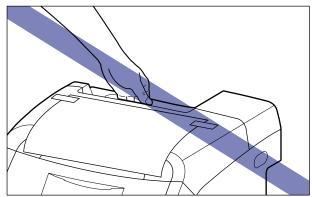




# **A** CAUTION

- This printer weighs approximately 56.9 lb (25.8 kg) without the paper cassette installed. The printer must be carried by 2 or more people, and care must be taken to avoid hurting your back or other portions of your body when carrying the printer.
- Be sure not to hold the printer by the paper cassette, output area, or any
  portions other than the lift handles. If you do so, you may drop the printer,
  resulting in personal injury.





# IMPORTANT

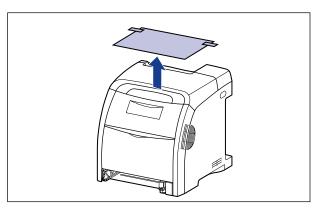
Carry the printer with the tape that secures the rear cover, etc. attached.

3 Put the printer down carefully at the installation site.

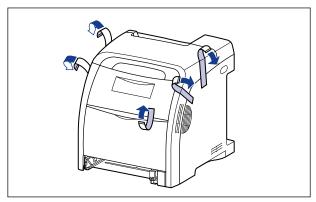
# **A** CAUTION

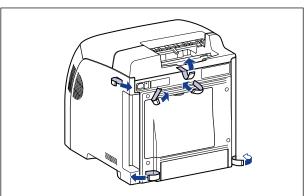
Put the printer down slowly and carefully. Be careful not to hurt your hands.

# Remove the paper on which cautions are described.



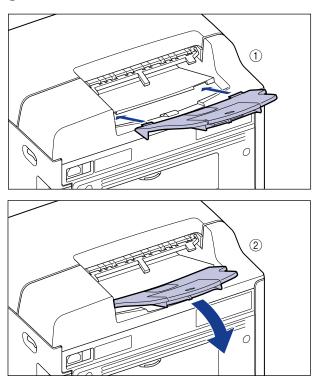
# Remove the tape attached to the printer (11 locations).



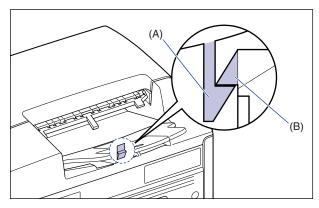


# 6 Install the output tray.

Insert the projections of the output tray in the printer 1, then tilt the output tray 2.

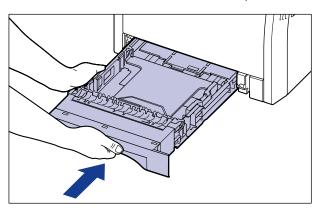


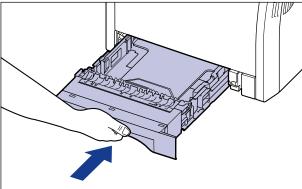
Install the output tray until it clicks so that (A) on the back of it is hooked on (B) of the printer as shown in the figure.



# Set the paper cassette in the printer.

Push the paper cassette into the printer firmly until the front side of the paper cassette is flush with the front surface of the printer.





### A CAUTION

When setting the paper cassette in the printer, be careful not to catch your fingers.

# **Installing the Toner Cartridges**

The toner cartridges to which packing materials are attached are already installed in the printer.

Be sure to take out the toner cartridges once, and then remove the packing materials using the following procedure.



### A CAUTION

Take care not to allow the toner to come into contact with your hands or clothing, as this will dirty your hands or clothing. If they become dirty, wash them immediately with cold water. Washing with warm water will set the toner and make it impossible to remove the toner stains.



#### **IMPORTANT**

Dispose of the packing materials according to local regulations.

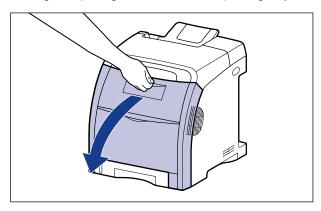


#### NOTE

- For details on how to handle a toner cartridge, see "Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-16.
- The packing materials may be changed in form or position to be placed, or may be added or removed without notice.

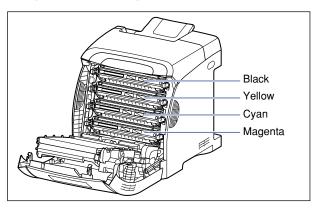
# Open the front cover.

Holding the opening of the front cover, open it gently.

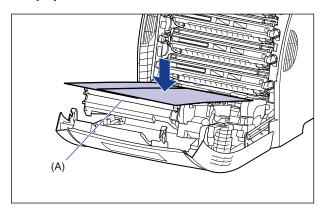


# **IMPORTANT**

The toner cartridges are installed in order of black, yellow, cyan, and magenta from the top as shown in the figure.



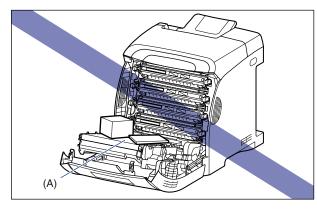
2 Place paper (Letter size paper is recommended) on the transfer belt of the ETB unit (A) as shown in the figure so that the paper is not shifted.

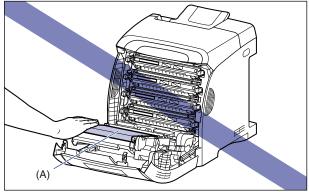


### IMPORTANT

• When installing or removing the toner cartridges, be sure to place paper on the transfer belt of the ETB unit to protect the belt.

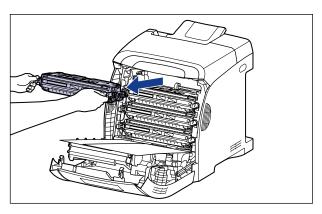
• Do not place any object on or touch the transfer belt (A) of the ETB unit. The transfer belt of the ETB unit is supplied with a function that cleans itself, therefore, do not clean the belt even when the toner is on it. If the ETB unit is broken or transfer belt is damaged, this may result in misfeeds or deterioration in print quality.





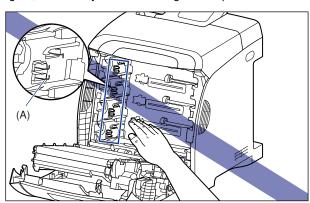
# 3 Holding the toner cartridge by the blue tabs on the both sides, pull it horizontally.

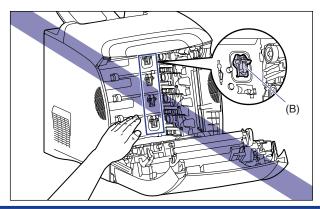
Holding the toner cartridge with your both hands firmly, pull it out so that you do not touch the transfer belt of the ETB unit.



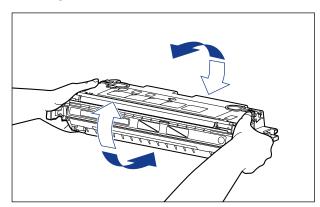
## IMPORTANT

Do not touch the high-voltage contact (A) or the electrical contacts (B) shown in the figure, as this may result in damage to the printer.





4 Hold the toner cartridge as shown in the figure, shake it gently 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner inside the cartridge.

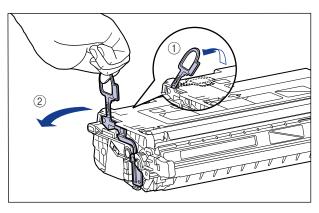


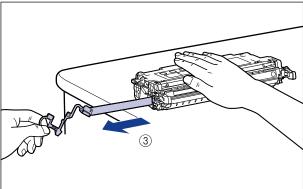
# IMPORTANT

- If toner is not distributed evenly, this may result in deterioration in print quality. Be sure to carry out this procedure properly.
- Be sure to shake the toner cartridge gently. If you do not shake the cartridge gently, toner may spill out.

5 Place the toner cartridge on a flat surface, fold back the tab of the sealing tape 10, and then pull out the sealing tape (approx. 19 in. (48 cm) long) gently 3 while supporting the toner cartridge.

Remove the sealing tape by hooking your fingers into the tab and pulling it out straight in the direction of the arrow.



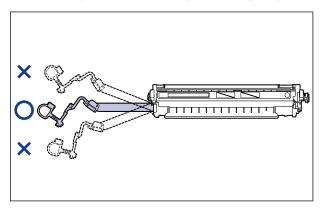


### **A** CAUTION

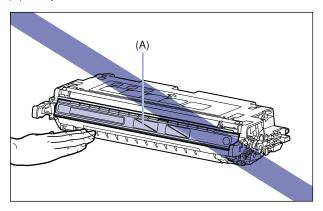
If the sealing tape is pulled out forcefully or stopped at midpoint, toner may spill out. If the toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and immediately consult a physician.

# **IMPORTANT**

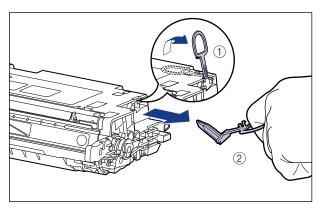
• Do not pull the sealing tape diagonally, upwards, or downwards. If the tape is severed, it may become difficult to pull out completely.



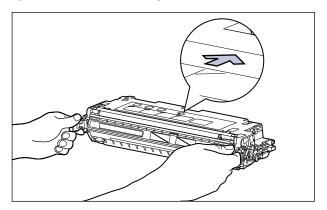
- Pull out the sealing tape completely from the toner cartridge. If any tape remains in the toner cartridge, this may result in poor print quality.
- When pulling out the sealing tape, be careful not to hold the drum protective shutter (A) with your hands.



6 Hook your finger into the tab and remove the packing materials as shown in the figure.

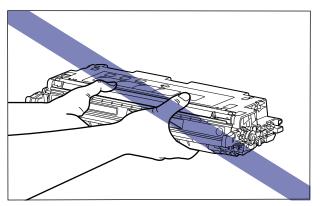


Hold the toner cartridge properly with the arrowed side facing up as shown in the figure.



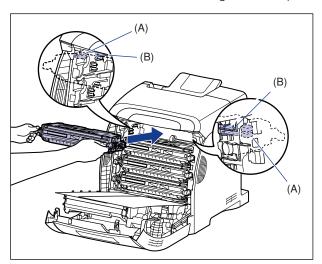
# IMPORTANT

Do not hold the toner cartridge in a manner that is not directed in this procedure.



# 8 Hold the toner cartridge with both hands and install it into the printer.

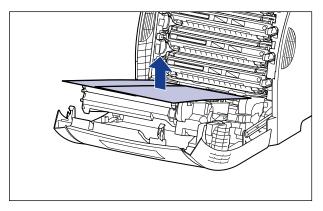
Align (A) of the toner cartridge with the slots (B) to which the label of the same color is attached, then insert the cartridge until it stops.



## (IMPORTANT

Be sure to install the toner cartridge by pushing it firmly. If the toner cartridges are not installed firmly, this may result in deterioration in print quality.

# After removing all the packing materials on the toner cartridges and installing the cartridges, remove the paper.

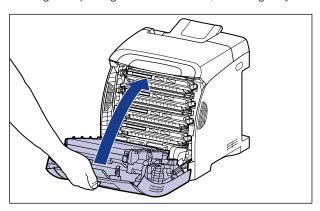


### IMPORTANT

When removing the paper, be careful not to touch or damage the transfer belt of the ETB unit.

# 10 Close the front cover.

Holding the opening of the front cover, close it gently.



### **A** CAUTION

When closing the front cover, be careful not to catch your fingers.

### (III) IMPORTANT

- If you cannot close the front cover, check if the toner cartridge is installed properly. If you try to close the front cover forcefully, this may result in damage to the printer.
- Do not leave the front cover open for a long time after installing the toner cartridge.

# **Loading Paper**

By default, this printer feeds paper from two paper sources: the paper cassette (Cassette 1) and multi-purpose tray. Also, paper can be fed from up to 3 paper sources by installing the optional paper feeder (Cassette 2).

For details on the procedure for loading paper or installing the optional paper feeder in the printer, see the following directions.

- When loading paper in the paper cassette See "Loading Paper in the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-19
- When loading paper in the multi-purpose tray See "Loading Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray," on p. 4-36
- When installing the optional paper feeder in the printer See "Installing the Paper Feeder," on p. 9-2
- When loading paper in the paper cassette of the paper feeder See "Loading Paper in the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-19

For details on the output trays of this printer, see "Output Tray," on p. 4-15.

# **Connecting the Cables**

# **Connecting the Power Cord**

This section describes the procedure for connecting the power cord. When connecting the power cord, see "Important Safety Instructions," on p. xvii.

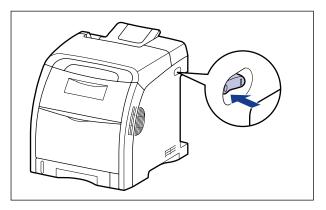


### **IMPORTANT**

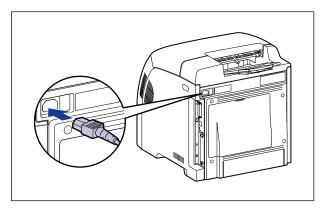
- One AC power outlet should be used exclusively for the printer.
- Do not plug the power plug into the auxiliary outlet on a computer.
- Do not connect this printer to an uninterruptible power source. This may cause printer malfunction or breakdown at the occurrence of a power failure.

# 1 Make sure that the power switch of the printer is OFF.

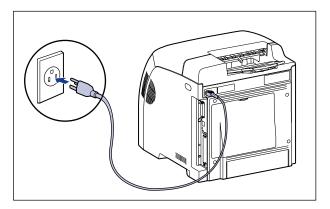
The printer is OFF when "O" of the power switch is pressed.



# **2** Plug the supplied power cord into the power socket.



**3** Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.



# **Connecting to a Computer**

This section describes how to connect the printer to a computer and network.

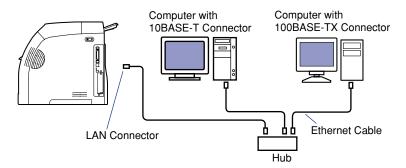
This printer is equipped with a LAN connector, USB connector, and parallel connector (supports only unidirectional communication).

### Using a LAN Cable

By connecting the printer to a network such as Ethernet to be shared on the network, you can use the printer from a computer on the network. You can use UNIX, Windows, Mac OS, and other operating systems.

This printer includes a print server that supports 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX and is compatible with the TCP/IP, AppleTalk (EtherTalk), and SMB protocols.

Connect the LAN connector on this printer and a hub port with a Category 5 twisted pair cable. Have cables or a hub ready as needed. For compatible cables and hubs, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.





### **CAUTION**

Before connecting the network cable to the printer, be sure to turn the printer OFF, and then unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet. Failure to observe these steps may result in an electrical shock.



#### **IMPORTANT**

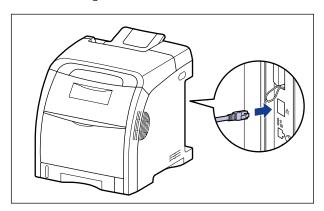
If more than one devices are connected to an AppleTalk network, turn on each device at an interval of ten seconds or longer.



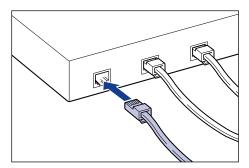
- This printer recognizes the type of Ethernet (100BASE-TX or 10BASE-T) automatically.
- If both 100BASE-TX devices and 10BASE-T devices are on the same network, a device such as a switching hub that supports both 100BASE-TX and 10BASE-T is required. For more details, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.
- If you connected this printer to a network, check the MAC address of the print server with Configuration Page Print, and then configure the network operating system (UNIX, etc.) and print server. For more details, see "Network Guide".

# 1 Connect the LAN cable to the LAN connector of the printer.

Connect a LAN cable that is compatible with the LAN connector of the network board according to the network.



# 2 Connect the other end of the LAN cable to the hub.



### Installing the Software

After connecting the LAN cable, install the software for this printer. For more details, see "Driver Guide".



The supplied CD-ROM does not include the printer driver for Macintosh. Download the printer driver for Macintosh that supports this printer from the Canon website. If you cannot find the printer driver for Macintosh that supports this printer on the Canon website, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

### Using a USB Cable

Connect the printer to a computer equipped with a USB port using a USB cable.



#### WARNING

When plugging or unplugging the USB cable when the power plug is plugged in an AC power outlet, do not touch the metal part of the connector, as this may result in electrical shock.



#### **IMPORTANT**

- Do not plug or unplug the USB cable while the computer and printer are ON, as this may result in damage to the printer.
- This printer uses bi-directional communication. Operation of the printer when connected via unidirectional communication equipment has not been tested, and as a result, Canon cannot guarantee printer operation when the printer is connected using unidirectional print servers, USB hubs or switching devices.



#### NOTE

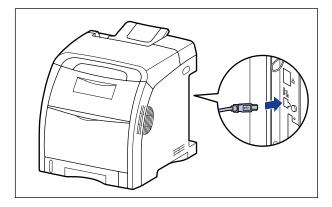
- The appropriate USB interface varies depending on the operating system of the connected computer as follows. For more details, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.
- Windows 98/Me: USB Full-Speed (USB1.1 equivalent)
- Windows 2000/XP/Server 2003: USB 2.0 Hi-Speed/USB Full-Speed (USB1.1 equivalent)
- Mac OS X 10.3.2 or earlier: USB Full-Speed (USB 1.1 equivalent)
- Mac OS X 10.3.3 or later: USB 2.0 Hi-Speed/USB Full-Speed (USB1.1 equivalent)
- When you connect this printer to a computer with a USB cable, use a computer with manufacturer's guarantee of USB proper operation.
- This printer does not come with a USB cable. Have an appropriate one available for the computer you are using. Use a USB cable with the following symbol.



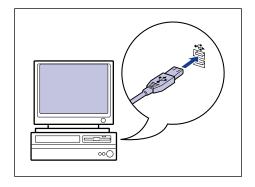


Make sure that the printer and computer are OFF.

# Connect the B-type (square) end of the USB cable to the USB connector on the printer.



## 3 Connect the A-type (flat) end of the USB cable to the USB port on the computer.



### ∅ NOTE

If you are not sure about the USB cable that is supported by the computer you are using, contact the store where you purchased the computer.

### Installing the Software

After connecting the USB cable, install the software for this printer. For more details, see "Driver Guide".

### IMPORTANT

The supplied CD-ROM does not include the printer driver for Macintosh. Download the printer driver for Macintosh that supports this printer from the Canon website. If you cannot find the printer driver for Macintosh that supports this printer on the Canon website, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

### **Using a Printer Cable**

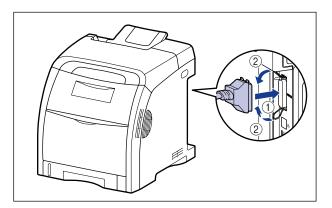
If the printer port of the computer you are using is a parallel interface (IEEE1284 compatible), use a printer cable that matches the connector of the computer.



### **CAUTION**

Before connecting the network cable to the printer, be sure to turn the printer OFF, and then unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet. Failure to observe these steps may result in an electrical shock.

1 Connect the centronics 36 pin connector of the printer cable to the parallel connector on the printer ①, and then secure the fastening pins ②.



2 Connect the other end of the printer cable to the printer port on the computer.

### • Installing the Software

After connecting the printer cable, install the software for this printer. For more details, see "Driver Guide".

## Turning the Printer ON and Checking the Printer Operation

This section describes the procedures for turning the printer ON and checking the printer operation.

## Turning the Printer ON



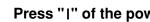
#### **IMPORTANT**

- Do not turn the printer ON immediately after turning it OFF. If you want to turn the printer ON again after turning it OFF, wait at least 10 seconds after turning the printer OFF before turning it ON again.
- If the printer does not operate properly or an error message appears, see "When the Printer Does Not Operate Properly," on p. 2-38.
- Be sure to set the paper cassette in the printer before you turn the power ON for the first time after you install the printer.

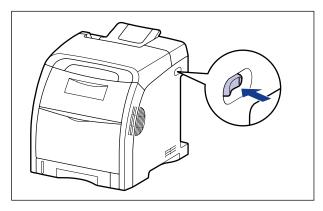


#### **NOTE**

When you turn the power ON for the first time after you install a hard disk or when a problem has occurred to the hard disk, the printer is ready to print after approximately 60 seconds after it is turned ON because the hard disk is formatted after the printer is turned ON.

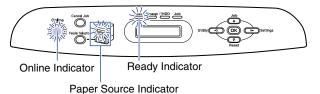


## Press "I" of the power switch to turn the printer ON.



The indicators and display on the control panel come on, and the printer initiates a self-diagnostic test on the printer unit and optional accessories.

If no abnormality is found during the self-diagnostic test, the Online indicator, Ready indicator and Paper Source indicator for the currently selected paper source come on, <00 READY> appears in the display, and the printer is ready to print.



The following information is displayed in the display.



## Registering a Paper Size

This printer's paper cassette cannot automatically detect the paper size. Therefore, in CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu, you need to register the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette. When paper is loaded in the multi-purpose tray, you need to register the size of the loaded paper in TRAY PAPER SIZE in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu.

For details on the procedures for registering a paper size, see the following directions.

- When registering the size of the paper in the paper cassette
   See "Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-31
- When registering the size of the paper in the multi-purpose tray
   See "Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray," on p. 4-48

When printing from DOS, UNIX, or other operating system on which the printer driver cannot be used, also set STD PAPER SIZE (See p. 6-24) in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu to the size of the loaded paper.

## Specifying a Paper Type

Specify the paper type using the control panel according to the type of the loaded paper. The printer applies the appropriate print mode to the paper type. When you loaded paper in the paper cassette, specify the type of the loaded paper in CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2) in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu. When you loaded paper in the multi-purpose tray, specify the type of the loaded paper in TRAY PAPER TYPE in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu.

For details on the procedures for specifying a paper type, see the following directions.

- When specifying the type of the paper in the paper cassette See "Specifying the Type of the Paper in the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-33
- When specifying the type of the paper in the multi-purpose tray See "Specifying the Type of the Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray," on p. 4-50

When printing from DOS, UNIX, or other operating system on which the printer driver cannot be used, also set STD PAPER TYPE (See p. 6-27) in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu to the type of the loaded paper.

## **Checking the Operations with Configuration Page Print**

Before using the printer for the first time, be sure to perform Configuration Page Print to check the operations using the following procedure. Configuration Page Print prints printer information such as a list of the menu settings and the number of the total print pages.



#### ∅ NOTE

- Configuration Page Print is designed to be printed on Letter size paper. Load a sheet of Letter size paper in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray.
- The settings specified using the menu of the printer's control panel are reflected to Configuration Page Print. For example, when the automatic 2-sided printing function is specified, Configuration Page Print will be printed with two pages on both sides of paper. However, always a sheet of paper is printed regardless of the number of copies.

### **Printing Configuration Page Print**

Print Configuration Page Print using the following procedure.

Press "|" of the power switch to turn the printer ON.



Make sure that the printer is online.

If the printer is not online, press [Online].



3 Press [Utility].



CONFIG.PAGE is displayed in the display.



4 Press [OK].



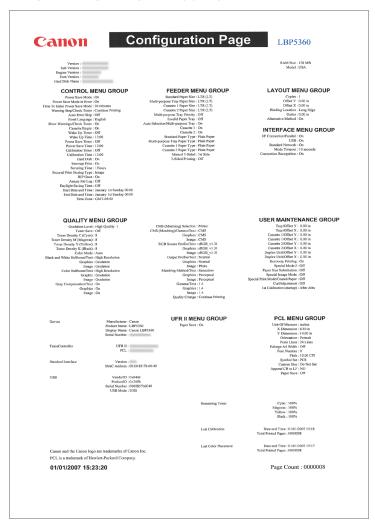
Configuration Page Print is printed.

### **Contents of Configuration Page Print**

Configuration Page Print prints information as shown in the following figure. Configuration Page Print allows you to confirm information such as a list of the setting values specified in the printer function menu, the versions of the software and hardware equipped with the printer, and number of the total print pages. You can check the number of total print pages using "Page Count" on the lower right of Configuration Page Print.



This is a sample of Configuration Page Print. The contents may partially differ from the Configuration Page Print printed by your printer.



## When the Printer Does Not Operate Properly

If the printer does not operate even after turning it ON or print Configuration Page Print properly, the following causes are conceivable.

Symptom	Cause	Remedy	
	The power plug is unplugged from the AC power outlet.	Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.	
The printer cannot be turned ON.	There is a break in the power cord.	If the printer is turned ON after replacing the power cord with the one that is of the same type and is used for other device, there is a break in the power cord. In this case, purchase a new power cord and replace it with the broken one.	
	The printer is not ON.	Turn the printer ON.	
The indicators on the control panel do not come on.	The printer is in Power Save Mode.  The printer will be ready print after you send print or press any key on the control panel.		
	The printer is offline.	Press [Online] to turn on the Online indicator.	
The printer does not operate.	The interface cable is disconnected.	Connect the interface cable firmly to the interface connectors on the computer and printer unit.	
	The amount of the paper loaded in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray exceeds the load limitation.	Reduce the amount of paper to within the load limitation and print again.	
A paper jam occurs each time you print.	Paper is not loaded properly in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray.	Load the paper properly and print again.	
	Unusable paper is loaded in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray.	Replace the paper with one that can be used and print again.	
	There is still jammed paper inside the printer.	Remove any jammed paper and print again.	

Symptom	Cause	Remedy
Nothing is printed on the paper.	Multiple sheets of paper were fed at a time.	Align the paper stack in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray properly and load it again. If you are using transparencies, coated paper, or labels, fan them thoroughly and load them again.
	The toner cartridge was installed with the sealing tape still attached.	Take the toner cartridge out of the printer, pull out the sealing tape, and reinstall the toner cartridge.
The Message indicator is on and a message is displayed in the display.	Some problem has occurred.	See "Message List" (p. 8-33) and solve the problem.

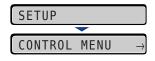
## **Changing the Language Used in the Display**

The default value of the language used in the display is [ENGLISH].

You can change the display language to [FRENCH], [GERMAN], [ITALIAN], or [SPANISH] using the following procedure.



1 Press [Settings].





Select CONTROL MENU using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].



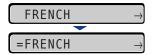


3 Select PANEL LANGUAGE using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].





Select the display language using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].



The display language is changed.

PANNEAU LANGUES→

## **Turning the Printer OFF**

Turn the printer OFF using the following procedure. The procedure for turning the printer OFF is different between when a hard disk is used and when it is not used.



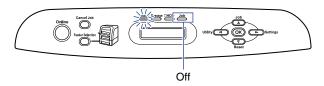
#### **IMPORTANT**

- When using the hard disk, be sure to turn the printer OFF as the procedure for the protection of the hard disk. (See p. 2-41)
- If the printer is connected to a network, make sure that other computers are not sending print data to the printer before turning the printer OFF.
- If you turn the printer OFF when the Job indicator is on, all the print data remaining in the printer memory will be erased. If there is any necessary print data remaining in the printer, wait until it is output, or press [Reset] in the offline state and then select FORM FEED to output the data before turning the printer OFF.
- Do not turn the power OFF when the printer is in any of the following status:
  - During printing
  - While the printer is running a self-diagnostic test immediately after turning the power ON
  - While a message informing you that the NVRAM is being initialized or being written is displayed
  - While <02 WARMING UP> or <02 CALIBRATING> is displayed
- When you are using a hard disk, make sure that the HDD indicator is not on. If you turn
  the printer OFF while the HDD indicator is on (while data is being read from the hard disk
  or being written to the hard disk), the hard disk may be damaged and disabled.

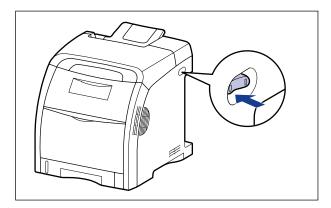
### When Not Using a Hard Disk

When you are not using a hard disk, turn the printer OFF using the following procedure.

1 Make sure that the Job indicator is off.



**2** Press "○" of the power switch on the printer.



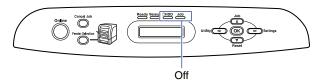
## When Using a Hard Disk (Only When a Hard Disk Is Installed)

When using the optional hard disk, turn the printer OFF using the following procedure.

#### **IMPORTANT**

- If you perform a shutdown when any job of which you stopped the operation or of secured print in the hard disk, the message <JOBS REMAIN> is displayed. If you perform a shutdown, all the jobs are deleted. However, the jobs stored in the boxes are saved in the hard disk as it is. When you want to continue to print, press [Online] to place the printer online.
- Once you perform a shutdown, you cannot cancel the operation in midstream. When you want to turn the printer ON again, turn the printer OFF once following the instruction of the message, and then turn the printer ON.

Make sure that the Job indicator and HDD indicator are off.





2 Press [Reset].





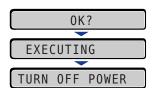




Select SHUT DOWN using [◄] and [▶], then press [OK].

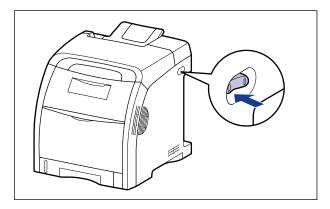


Confirm the message, then press [OK].



When the printer is ready to be turned OFF after the process for it is performed, the message <TURN OFF POWER> appears.

5 When the message <TURN OFF POWER> appears, press "O" of the power switch on the printer.



# **Using the Printer**



This chapter describes the basic functions of this printer.

Power Saving (Power Save Mode)	3-2
Online and Offline	
Placing the Printer Offline	
Printing/Saving Jobs (Only When the Hard Disk Is Installed)	
Printing with a Password Specified (Secured Print/Encrypted Secured Print)	3-9
Canceling a Job	3-14
Outputting Data (Forced Output)	3-14
Canceling a Job (Cancel Job)	3-15
Canceling the Process Currently Being Performed (Soft Reset)	3-16
Canceling All the Jobs (Hard Reset)	3-17

## **Power Saving (Power Save Mode)**

You can reduce power consumption efficiently by using POWER SAVE MODE when the printer is idle or not in use.

There are the following two kinds of Power Save Mode.



#### **IMPORTANT**

Even if the power switch is turned OFF, power is consumed only slightly while the power plug is inserted into the AC power outlet. To cut the power consumption completely, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.



#### NOTE

- The Job indicator is on while a job is being stored into a box even if the printer is in Power Save Mode (The printer can store jobs into the boxes only when a hard disk is installed in the printer).
- You can release Power Save Mode by setting TIMER SETTINGS to WAKE UP TIME (See p. 6-18).
- To configure the printer so that it does not enter Power Save Mode, set POWER SAVE MODE (See p. 6-13) to OFF.
- To configure the printer so that it does not enter Power Save Mode when an error is occurring in the printer (when the Message indicator is on, or the number in the message blinks), set PWR SAVE IN ERR (See p. 6-14) to OFF.

#### ■ Power Save Mode 1 (Panel Off Mode) ... Power-saving effect: Small

The printer enters Power Save Mode 1 when it is in either of all the conditions in Condition 1 or Condition 2.

Condition 1	Condition 2
POWER SAVE MODE is set to ON or PANEL OFF.	POWER SAVE MODE is set to ON or PANEL OFF.
The panel operation has not been performed and no data has	When POW. SAVE TIMER (See p. 6-18) in TIMER SETTINGS is set to ON, and the time specified POWER SAVE TIME (See p. 6-19) has elapsed
been sent from the computer for the time specified in POWER SAVE TIME (See p. 6-14). (You can select 5 minutes, 15 minutes, 30 minutes, 60 minutes, or 180 minutes for POWER SAVE TIME, and the default value is 30 minutes.)	Panel operation has not been performed.
	No data has been sent from the computer.
	The printer is not starting up.
	During a shutdown (Only when the hard disk is installed)
	While the hard disk is being initialized (Only when the hard disk is installed)



#### NOTE

- When the printer enters Power Save Mode 1, only the Ready indicator comes on. However, when the printer is offline, only the Message indicator comes on.
- Power Save Mode 1 can be released when the printer is in any of the following status:
- When any key on the control panel is pressed
- When an error is occurring
- When the printer is online and receives data from the computer (except for when the printer is storing a job into a box)
- When WAKE UP TIMER (See p. 6-17) in TIMER SETTINGS is set to ON, and the time specified in WAKE UP TIME (See p. 6-18) has elapsed
- When the settings for [Utility Menu] are specified in the Remote UI
- When the settings for [Perform Calibration] are specified in the Remote UI
- When the settings for [Device Control] are specified in the Remote UI
- When the [User Maintenance Menu] page in the [Device Settings] menu in the Remote UI is displayed or specified its settings

## ■ Power Save Mode 2 (Printer Power Save Mode) ... Power-saving effect:

The printer enters Power Save Mode 2 when it is in all the following conditions.

#### Condition

The printer has already entered Power Save Mode 1.

POWER SAVE MODE is set to ON.

The 15 minutes for which the printer remains in the printer status has passed since the printer was turned ON or Power Save Mode 2 was released.

There is no job on the print queue.

A service call is not occurring.

A paper jam is not occurring.

No cover is open.

The toner cartridge is installed.



### ∧ NOTE

- When the printer enters Power Save Mode 2, only the Ready indicator comes on. However, when the printer is offline, only the Message indicator comes on.
- Power Save Mode 2 can be released when the printer is in any of the following status:
  - When any key on the control panel is pressed
  - When an error occurs (However, Power Save Mode 2 may not be released depending on the error type.)
  - When the printer is online and receives data from the computer (except for when the printer is storing a job into a box)
  - When WAKE UP TIMER (See p. 6-17) in TIMER SETTINGS is set to ON, and the time specified in WAKE UP TIME (See p. 6-18) has elapsed
  - When the settings for [Utility Menu] are specified in the Remote UI
  - When the settings for [Perform Calibration] are specified in the Remote UI
  - When the settings for [Device Control] are specified in the Remote UI
  - When the [User Maintenance Menu] page in the [Device Settings] menu in the Remote UI is displayed or specified its settings

## **Online** and Offline

When the printer can receive data from the computer and print the data, the printer is in the state of "Online", and when the printer is disconnected with the computer and cannot receive data, the printer is in the state of "Offline".

To perform the settings for each menu using the control panel, switch the printer status as follows:

- : The status that you can enter the menu
- x: The status that you cannot enter the menu

	When the printer is online	When the printer is offline
SETUP Menu	O*	0
SELECT FEEDER Menu	0	0
RESET Menu	0	0
JOB Menu	0	х
UTILITY Menu	0	х

<sup>\*</sup> The [User Maintenance Menu] options cannot be specified when the printer is online.

## Placing the Printer Online

When printing from the computer, the printer has to be online. Before printing, make sure that the printer is online. If not, place the printer online using the following procedure. The printer comes online automatically after you turn it ON.



## Press [Online].

The Online indicator comes on, and the printer is ready to print.



When an error is occurring in the printer (when the Message indicator is on, or the number in the message blinks), the printer does not come online. Eliminate the cause of the error before you place the printer online.



If the printer has entered Power Save Mode, the Online indicator is off even when the printer is online, and only the Ready indicator is on. If the printer receives data while it is in Power Save Mode, the mode is released, the Online indicator comes on, and the printer is ready to print.

## **Placing the Printer Offline**

To configure the printer so that it does not receive data from the computer or specify the settings for all the options in the SETUP menu, place the printer offline using the following procedure.



## Press [Online].

The Online indicator goes off, allowing you to specify the settings on the control panel.

## **IMPORTANT**

This printer comes online automatically if left in the offline state for five minutes or longer. However, when an error is occurring in the printer (when the Message indicator is on, or the number in the message blinks), or while you are performing any setting, such as selecting the menu functions or a paper source, or when specifying the paper size, the printer does not come online.

## **Printing/Saving Jobs**

## (Only When the Hard Disk Is Installed)

If you install an optional hard disk in this printer, you can use various print job process functions with the printer driver for this printer.



#### NOTE

You cannot use this function on the DOS application, UNIX or other computer on which the printer driver cannot be used. Print jobs are processed in the [Print] mode.

## **Job Process Method Types**

You can use the following functions with the printer driver for this printer.



#### NOTE

- The message <53 SEC.PRINT ERR> or <53 STORE ERROR> appears when the amount of data or number of jobs exceeds the limit that you can save on the hard disk. If either of these messages appear, skip the error by pressing [Online]. However, the jobs in which you skipped the error are deleted. Therefore, delete any unnecessary job from among the jobs saved on the hard disk before performing a secured print or saving a job.
- If you want to use the encrypted secured print function in which the security for data communication is reinforced, you need to install software required for printing encrypted secured print jobs. For details on software required for printing encrypted secured print jobs, see "Driver Guide". For the procedure for installing the software, see Readme.txt in the CD-ROM "Encrypted Secured Print Driver Add-in For Client PC" supplied with the optional hard disk.

### ■ [Print] Mode

Performs regular printing.



#### NOTE

You can use this mode even if a hard disk is not installed in the printer.

### ■ [Secured Print] Mode

Allows you to specify a user name and password for print jobs. Print jobs are saved on the hard disk in the printer, and you can print by entering passwords from the printer's control panel or the Remote UI. This function is convenient when you print a confidential document etc. that you do not want others to read.



#### NOTE

- The jobs saved on the hard disk using the [Secured Print] mode are deleted in the following circumstances:
  - When the printer is turned OFF

- When a hard reset or soft reset is performed
- After a secured print job is printed
- When no printing operation has been performed by the printer's control panel or Remote UI for a fixed period
- The time interval from when no printing operation is not performed by the Remote UI or printer's control panel for a fixed period until the printer deletes encrypted secured print jobs is set to "1 hour" in the default settings. You can change the setting for the time interval. For more details, see "SECURING TIME," on p. 6-20.

#### ■ [Store] Mode

This mode is used for saving print jobs in the hard disk (boxes) in the printer. To print any of the saved jobs, specify the job in a box using the printer's control panel or Remote UI. The Remote UI is convenient when you print the forms that you use frequently, because it allows you to specify the number of copies or pages to be printed. Also, because you can specify the box when saving data, you can classify the jobs by use.



#### NOTE

The print jobs printed in the [Store] mode are saved on the hard disk, and they are not deleted even after turning the printer OFF. When you want to delete these jobs, use the Remote UI.

### **■** [Interrupt] Mode

This mode is used for pausing the job currently being processed and start printing the specified job on ahead. The paused print jobs are saved on the hard disk in the printer and printed again after the print job that interrupted is completed.



#### ∅ NOTE

While the print job that interrupted is being processed, no more job can interrupt the job.

#### ■ [Edit and Preview] Mode

This mode is used for editing multiple print jobs in [Canon PageComposer]. The edit function allows you to change the page order, display the preview of printout results, or print with the number of copies specified. This function is convenient when you print documents to make a simple booklet or edit and print document data from multiple applications or files into a booklet.



#### ∧ NOTE

You can use this mode even if a hard disk is not installed in the printer.

## Printing with a Password Specified (Secured Print/ **Encrypted Secured Print)**

In a secured print or encrypted secured print, a password-protected job is saved in the printer, and the job is printed by the printer's control panel or Remote UI. For details on using the Remote UI, see "Remote UI Guide".

This section describes the procedure for printing using the printer's control panel.

Print a secured print job or encrypted secured print job using the printer driver on the computer.



#### ∧ NOTE

- Print a secured print job by selecting [Secured Print] in the printer driver, and then entering the user name and password.
- Specify the user name for a secured print with 15 or less alphanumeric characters and the password with 1 to 7 characters.
- For the procedure for printing encrypted secured print jobs, see Online Help of the Encrypted Secured Print Driver Add-in For Client PC. You can display the Online Help from the Encrypted Secured Print Driver Add-in For Client PC after installing the printer driver.

## Move to the printer when printing.



- Secured print jobs/encrypted secured print jobs are deleted in the following circumstances:
  - When the printer is turned OFF
  - When a hard reset or soft reset is performed
  - After a secured print job/encrypted secured print job is printed
  - When no printing operation has been performed by the printer's control panel or Remote UI for a fixed period
- The time interval from when no printing operation is not performed by the Remote UI or printer's control panel for a fixed period until the printer deletes encrypted secured print jobs is set to "1 hour" in the default settings. You can change the setting for the time interval. For more details, see "SECURING TIME," on p. 6-20.



## Make sure that the printer is online.

If the printer is not online, press [Online].



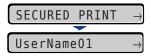
Press [Job].



The JOB menu is displayed.

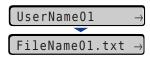


5 Select SECURED PRINT or ENCRYPTED PRINT using [◄] and [▶], then press [OK].





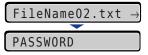
If the user names appear, select the target user name using [ ◀ ] and [ ▶ ], then press [OK].





(ок

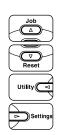
If the file names appear, select the name of the target file using [◄] and [▶], then press [OK].





<PASSWORD> is displayed. Press [OK].





## Select a number using [▲] and [▼], then move a digit using [**◄**] and [**▶**].

Repeat this operation to enter the password.





The password for an encrypted secured print is to be specified with 1 to 48 alphanumeric characters. Because only numbers can be entered from the control panel, print an encrypted secured print job from the Remote UI if the password contains any alphabetic characters.



## 10 After entering the specified password, press [OK].

1234

The specified file is printed. If you enter a wrong password, the entered password disappears. In this case, re-enter the correct password.

## Printing a Job Saved in a Box (Stored Job Print)

In a stored job print, a job is saved on the hard disk in the printer by specifying [Store] from the computer, and the job is printed by the printer's control panel or Remote UI. For details on using the Remote UI, see "Remote UI Guide".

This section describes the procedure for printing using the printer's control panel.



#### NOTE

- The saved jobs remains in the hard disk even after being printed. When you want to delete the saved jobs, use the Remote UI. (See Remote UI Guide)
- Using the printer driver, you can change the name of the data to be saved when printing the data. Enter the name with 24 or less alphanumeric characters.
- Select [Store] in the printer driver on the computer, specify the box in which you want to store the job, and then print.



Up to the total of 100 jobs in all the boxes can be saved.

- Move to the printer when printing.
- Make sure that the printer is online.

If the printer is not online, press [Online].



Press [Job].



The JOB menu is displayed.



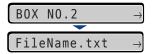
(ок)

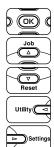
Select STOREJOB PRINT using [◄] and [▶], then press [OK].





Select the number for the box in which the job is stored using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].

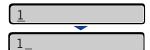




If <PASSWORD> appears, press [OK].



Select a number using  $[ \blacktriangle ]$  and  $[ \blacktriangledown ]$ , then move a digit using  $[ \blacktriangleleft ]$  and  $[ \blacktriangleright ]$ . Repeat this operation to enter the password.





8 Select the name of the target file using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].

ListFile.doc

The specified file is printed.

## Canceling a Job

When a part of print data has already been sent to the printer, the print job may not be finished even if you cancel the job from the computer. In this case, you can output the data to finish the printing process of the printer or cancel the job being processed in the printer or all the jobs.

## **Outputting Data (Forced Output)**

When a job is canceled from the computer or the data is less than one page, the data may remain in the printer memory, and the job may not be completed properly. As long as the printer remains in this state, you cannot print the next job because the printer cannot receive the next data. In this case, force the printer to output the print data using the following procedure.



#### **IMPORTANT**

- Data from PCL/UFR II Printer Driver cannot be output.
- If you have output data, the data being printed is deleted. Print the data from the computer again as needed.
- You cannot output data while the Message indicator is on. If you want to delete the received data, perform a soft reset. (See p. 3-16)
- When you are using an optional hard disk, set MODE TIMEOUT in the SETUP menu to a setting other than OFF. It is recommended that you should specify the default setting, 15 seconds, if possible.



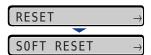
#### NOTE

- The Job indicator is on when any print data remains in the printer memory or when no print data remains in the printer but a job has not yet been completed.
- If MODE TIMEOUT for a job is specified, data less than one page is also output automatically when the specified time has elapsed (Data from PCL/UFR II Printer Driver is not output.). MODE TIMEOUT for a job is set to 15 seconds in the default settings.
- If the Job indicator does not go off even after outputting the data, perform a soft reset. (See p. 3-16)



## 1

### Press [Reset].



The RESET menu is displayed.



Select FORM FEED using [ ◀] and [▶], then press [OK].



The data remaining in the memory is printed.

## Canceling a Job (Cancel Job)

If you want to cancel the job currently being printed, perform "Cancel Job" using the following procedure. A job cancel allows you to cancel the job currently being received or processed. This option does not affect the next print data or the jobs that have not been processed yet.



#### **IMPORTANT**

- Cancel the job while the printer is processing the data (While the Job indicator is on or blinking). No job is canceled by pressing [Cancel Job] when the Job indicator is off.
- The data that has already been processed and is being printed (started to be fed) cannot be canceled. In this case, the next print data may be canceled.
- When there is any print data sent from a printer driver other than that for this printer, multiple data may be canceled.



#### **NOTE**

When canceling a job, you may not be able to cancel the job even if <03 CANCELING JOB> is displayed. The secure print job before entering the password and the job to be stored in the box cannot be canceled. Delete the secure print job before entering the password and the job to be stored in the box with Remote UI. (See Remote UI Guide)

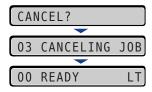
Cancel a job using the following procedure. When performing "Cancel Job", be sure that the Job indicator is on or blinking (the job that you want to cancel is being received or being processed).



Press [Cancel Job].



When canceling the job, press [OK].



<03 CANCELING JOB> appears, and the print data being processed is canceled. The job is canceled when <00 READY> appears.



You cannot operate the printer while <03 CANCELING JOB> is displayed.

## Canceling the Process Currently Being Performed (Soft Reset)

If you want to cancel the process currently being performed, perform SOFT RESET using the following procedure. A soft reset deletes the print data received by all the interfaces, the job being processed, and the print data in the printer memory.



#### **IMPORTANT**

- Be sure to operate the printer from the computer to cancel printing before canceling the job from the printer (Soft Reset).
- When a soft reset is performed, the data being printed and the data being received by all the interfaces is deleted. Therefore, perform printing from the computer again as needed.
- The data that has been already sent to the memory are all deleted even if it is the data of other interface. If you are using the printer on a network, be careful so that this operation does not affect the data from other computers when performing this procedure.



#### NOTE

Hard resets delete all the registered files such as the form data saved in the RAM of the printer, but soft resets do not delete them.



### Press [Reset].



The RESET menu is displayed.



## Select SOFT RESET using [◄] and [▶], then press [OK].

Holding down the [OK] key 3 seconds or more is the operation for HARD RESET.



When <03 SOFT RESET> disappears, the soft reset is completed.

## Canceling All the Jobs (Hard Reset)

When you want to delete all the jobs and data sent to memory for some reason, perform HARD RESET using the following procedure. A hard reset deletes the print data received by all the interfaces, the job being processed, and the print data in the printer memory.



#### **IMPORTANT**

- If the printer is reset while it is receiving data, the data that has not yet been sent to the memory will be sent after the reset. However, the data may not be printed properly.
- The data that has been already sent to the memory are all deleted even if it is the data of other interface. If you are using the printer on a network, be careful so that this operation does not affect the data from other computers when performing this procedure.



Press [Reset].



The RESET menu is displayed.



Select SOFT RESET using [◄] and [▶].





Hold down [OK] until HARD RESET is displayed, then release the button.

Hold down the button (approximately 3 seconds) until HARD RESET is displayed. Holding down the button less than 3 seconds is the operation for SOFT RESET.



When <03 HARD RESET> disappears, the hard reset is completed.

# **Loading and Outputting Paper**

This chapter describes the types of paper that can be used with this printer, and how to load and output paper.

Paper Requirements	4-2
Usable Paper	
Printable Area	4-7
Unusable Paper	4-8
Storing Paper	4-9
Storing Printouts	4-10
Paper Source	4-11
Paper Source Type	
Paper Capacity of Paper Source	
Selecting a Paper Source	
Precautions for Handling the Multi-purpose Tray or Paper Cassette	
Output Tray	
Output Tray	
Paper Capacity of the Output Tray.	
Printing from the Paper Cassette	
Precautions on Loading Paper	
Loading Paper in the Paper Cassette	
Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Paper Cassette	
Specifying the Type of the Paper in the Paper Cassette	
Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray	4-35
Loading Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray	4-36
Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray	
Specifying the Type of the Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray	
2-sided Printing	4-53
Switching Between Automatic 2-sided Printing and 1-sided Printing	
Loading Paper When Performing Automatic 2-sided Printing	
Manual 2-sided Printing	
Loading Paper When Performing Manual 2-sided Printing	
Loading Lapor Willott Oriottilling Marida 2-3idod Fillilling	

## **Paper Requirements**

## **Usable Paper**

To ensure optimum performance, use only paper that falls within the specifications in the following lists. Using inappropriate paper may result in deterioration in print quality or paper jams.



#### **IMPORTANT**

- Print speed may drop depending on the settings for the paper size, paper type, and print copies.
- When continuously printing the paper that is less than 8.27 in. (210.0 mm) wide, the safety function that prevents damages caused by heat may slow the print speed down in stages. (The print speed may be as slow as approximately 1.6 pages/min.)

### Paper Size

The following shows the paper sizes that can be used with this printer. The symbol "©" indicates that the paper is available for the 1-sided printing and automatic 2-sided printing; the symbol "○" indicates that the paper is available for only 1-sided printing; and the symbol "X" indicates that the printing cannot be performed.

	Paper Source		
Paper Size	Multi-purpose Tray	Cassette 1	Cassette 2 (Optional)
A4	0	0	0
B5	0	0	0
A5	0	0	0
Legal	0	0	0
Letter	0	0	0
Executive	0	0	0
Statement	0	х	х
Foolscap	0	0	0
16K	0	0	0
Custom Paper Size	O*1	○* <sup>2</sup>	O*2

	Paper Source		
Paper Size	Multi-purpose Tray	Cassette 1	Cassette 2 (Optional)
Envelope			
Envelope DL 4.33 in. x 8.66 in. (110.0 mm x 220.0 mm)	0	X	x
Envelope COM10 4.12 in. x 9.50 in. (104.7 mm x 241.3 mm)	0	х	Х
Envelope C5 6.38 in. x 9.02 in. (162.0 mm x 229.0 mm)	0	X	Х
Envelope Monarch 3.87 in. x 7.50 in. (98.4 mm x 190.5 mm)	0	X	Х
Envelope B5 6.93 in. x 9.84 in. (176.0 mm x 250.0 mm)	0	х	Х
Index Card 3.00 in. x 5.00 in. (76.2 mm x 127.0 mm)	0	Х	Х

<sup>\*1</sup> The following sizes of custom size paper can be loaded.

- When loading paper in portrait orientation: Width 3.00 to 8.50 in. (76.2 to 215.9 mm); Length 5.00 to 14.00 in. (127.0 to 355.6 mm)
- When loading paper in landscape orientation (Only when UFR II Printer Driver is used): Width 5.00 to 8.50 in. (127.0 to 215.9 mm); Length 5.00 to 8.50 in. (127.0 to 215.9 mm)

- When loading paper in portrait orientation: Width 5.83 to 8.50 in. (148.0 to 215.9 mm); Length 8.27 to 14.00 in. (210.0 to 355.6 mm)
- When loading paper in landscape orientation (Only when UFR II Printer Driver is used): Width 8.27 to 8.50 in. (210.0 to 215.9 mm); Length 8.27 to 8.50 in. (210.0 to 215.9 mm)

### Paper Type

The following shows the paper types that can be used with this printer. The symbol indicates the paper that can be used for 1-sided printing and automatic 2-sided printing, the symbol indicates the paper that can be used for only 1-sided printing, and the symbol X indicates the paper that cannot be used.

<sup>\*2</sup> The following sizes of custom size paper can be loaded.

	Paper Source		
Paper Type	Multi-purpose Tray	Cassette 1	Cassette 2 (Optional)
Plain paper (16.0 - 27.9 lb Bond (60 - 105 g/m²))	0	0	0
Heavy paper (28.0 lb Bond - 44.4 lb Cover (106 - 120 g/m²))	0	х	х
Heavy paper (44.5 - 81.4 lb Cover (121 - 220 g/m²))	0	х	х
Transparency (Black and white printing only)	0	х	х
Label	0	х	х
Coated paper (27.9 lb Bond - 44.4 lb Cover (105 - 120 g/m²))	0	х	х
Coated paper (44.5 - 59.2 lb Cover (121 - 160 g/m²))	0	х	х
Envelope	0	х	х

#### ■ Plain Paper

This printer can print plain paper that is 3.00 to 8.50 in. (76.2 to 215.9 mm) wide, 5.00 to 14.00 in. (127.0 to 355.6 mm) long, and that weighs between 16.0 and 27.9 lb Bond (60 and 105 g/m²), including the standard paper sizes: A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Statement, Foolscap, 16K, and Index Card.

Plain paper can be loaded in the paper cassettes and multi-purpose tray. Also, paper at a size of A4, Legal, Letter, or Foolscap is available for automatic 2-sided printing.

#### ■ Heavy Paper

This printer can print heavy paper that is 3.00 to 8.50 in. (76.2 to 215.9 mm) wide, 5.00 to 14.00 in. (127.0 to 355.6 mm) long, and that weighs between 28.0 lb Bond and 81.4 lb Cover (106 and 220 g/m²), including the standard paper sizes: A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Statement, Foolscap, 16K, and Index Card (However, it is not recommended to print on heavy paper that weighs between 65.2 and 81.4 lb Cover (177 and 220 g/m²). Set the settings for the paper type to "Heavy Paper 3" if you have to perform the printing.).

Heavy paper can be loaded in the multi-purpose tray. Also, heavy paper at a size of A4, Legal, Letter, or Foolscap that weighs between 28.0 lb Bond and 44.4 lb Cover (106 and 120 g/m²) is available for automatic 2-sided printing.

#### IMPORTANT

Printing speed drops when printing heavy paper.

#### ■ Transparency

This printer can print A4 and Letter size transparencies.

### IMPORTANT

- Transparencies can only be printed in black and white.
- Thoroughly fan the transparencies before loading them as they may stick to each other.
- Printing speed drops when printing transparencies.

#### ■ Label

This printer can print labels.

### (IMPORTANT

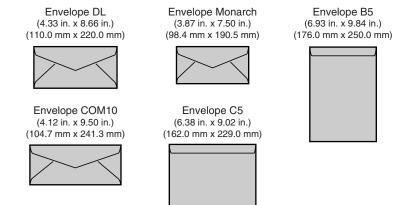
- Do not use the labels in the following conditions. Using inappropriate labels may result in paper jams that are difficult to clear or may result in damage to the printer.
  - Peeled labels or partly used labels
- Coated labels that are easily peeled off from the backing sheet
- Labels with uneven adhesive
- Printing speed drops when printing labels.

#### ■ Coated Paper

This printer can print coated paper. Coated paper is to be loaded in the multi-purpose tray. Also, coated paper at a size of A4, Legal, Letter, or Foolscap that weighs between 27.9 lb Bond and 44.4 lb Cover (105 and 120 g/m²) is available for automatic 2-sided printing.

#### **■** Envelope

The envelopes that can be used with this printer are as follows.

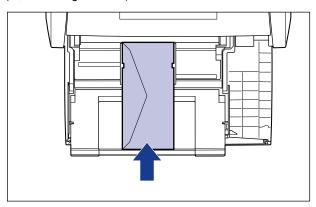


<sup>\*</sup> You cannot use envelopes at sizes of DL, COM 10, Monarch, and C5 that have a flap on the short edge.

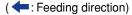
### IMPORTANT

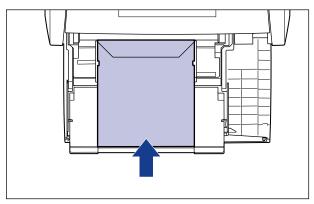
- Do not use the following types of envelopes. Using inappropriate envelopes may result in paper jams that are difficult to clear or may result in damage to the printer.
  - Envelopes with fasteners or snaps
  - Envelopes with address windows
  - Envelopes with adhesive on the surface
  - Wrinkled or creased envelopes
  - Poorly manufactured envelopes in which the glued parts are uneven
  - Irregularly-shaped envelopes
- Before loading the envelopes, flatten the stack of envelopes to release any remaining air, and press the fold lines along the edges tight.
- Do not print on the reverse side (glued side) of envelopes.
- When loading envelopes at sizes of DL, COM10, C5, or Monarch, load them so that the flap is toward the left of the printer when viewed from the front.

( =: Feeding direction)



• When printing envelopes of the Envelope B5 size, close the flaps and load them so that the envelopes are printed from the top (the edge with the flap).





• Printing speed drops when printing envelops.



When printing envelopes, they may be creased.

#### **Abbreviations of Paper Sizes**

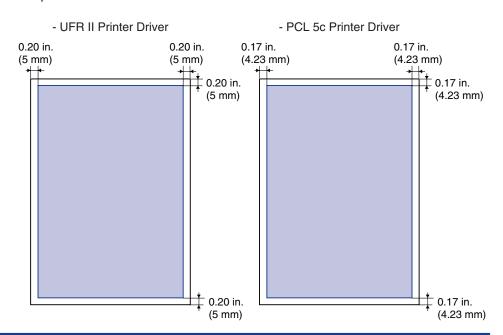
The following shows the abbreviations of paper sizes that are marked on the paper cassette.

Paper Size	Paper Guides
Legal	LGL
Letter	LTR
Executive	EXEC

### **Printable Area**

The following shows the printable area of this printer. However, if you have selected the [Print with Upper Left of Sheet as Starting Point] check box in the [Finishing Details] dialog box in the UFR II printer driver, you can extend the printable area to near the edges of the paper. Depending on the print data to be printed, however, the edge of paper may be missing partly during printing or may blot during color printing. For more details, see the Help of the UFR II printer driver.

## ■ Plain Paper/Heavy Paper/Transparency/Label/Coated Paper The printable areas are as follows:



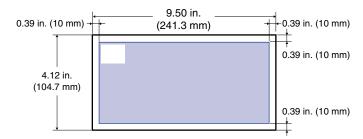
### **IMPORTANT**

You may not obtain the optimum print quality when printing data with no margin using the PCL 5c printer driver. It is recommended to secure a margin of 0.20 in. (5 mm) or more around the data.

#### ■ Envelope

You cannot print on any area within 0.39 in. (10 mm) of the edges of an envelope. You may have to change the printable area before printing depending on the application vou use.

(Sample: Envelope COM10)



### **Unusable Paper**

To avoid problems such as paper jams and other malfunctions, the following types of paper should never be used:



- · Paper that jams easily
  - Paper that is too thick or too thin
  - Irregularly-shaped paper
  - Wet or moist paper
  - Torn or damaged paper
  - Rough, extremely smooth, or glossy paper
- Paper with binding holes or perforations
- Curled or creased paper
- Specially coated paper (coated paper for ink jet printers, etc.)
- Labels with backing sheet that is easily peeled off
- Paper that has already been printed by a copy machine or another laser printer (The reverse side of the paper is also unusable. Using the multi-purpose tray, however, you can perform 2-sided printing manually on the other side of previously printed paper. You cannot print on the printed side again.)
- Paper with jagged edges
- Wrinkled paper
- Paper with the corners folded

- · Paper that changes its quality at a high temperature
- Paper that contains ink that melts, burns, evaporates or emits harmful gases at the heating temperature (approx. 527 °F or 275 °C) of the fixing unit
- Heat-sensitive paper
- Treated color paper
- Specially coated paper (coated paper for ink jet printers, etc.)
- Paper with adhesive on the surface
- Paper that causes printer malfunctions or damages the printer
  - Carbon paper
  - Paper with staples, clips, ribbons or tapes
  - Paper that has already been printed by a copy machine or another laser printer (The reverse side of the paper is also unusable. Using the multi-purpose tray, however, you can perform 2-sided printing manually on the other side of previously printed paper. You cannot print on the printed side again.)
- Paper that is difficult for the toner to fix onto
  - Paper with rough surfaces
- Specially coated paper (coated paper for ink jet printers, etc.)
- Paper containing thick fibers

### **Storing Paper**

The quality of paper may deteriorate if it is stored improperly even when the paper meets the normal specifications. Inferior paper may cause misfeeds, paper jams, or deterioration in print quality.

Observe the following guidelines when storing and handling paper:



- Store paper away from moisture since paper quality deteriorates in a moist environment.
- Paper wrappers help avoiding moisture and dryness. Keep paper in the wrapper until it is ready to be used. Store all unused paper in a wrapper.
- Store paper on a flat surface.
- Do not store paper on the floor where water and moisture can accumulate.
- · Avoid physical damage to stored paper.
- Do not store paper vertically or store too many stacks of paper in one pile.
- Do not store paper in places exposed to direct sunlight or places with high or low humidity.
- If the paper storage room and work area differ from each other significantly in temperature or humidity, keep packed paper stack in the work area for at least one day prior to printing so that it can adapt to the new environment. When paper is moved to a location where the temperature or humidity differs significantly, the paper may curl or become creased.

### **Storing Printouts**

When handling or storing printouts printed by this printer, be careful of the following points:



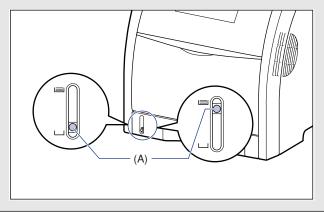
- Avoid storing printouts with PVC materials such as clear folders. Otherwise toner may melt and stick to the PVC material.
- Use insoluble adhesive when gluing printouts. Toner may melt when soluble adhesive is used. Before using the adhesive, test it with paper that is no longer required. Make sure that the printed paper is completely dry before placing one over another. Toner may melt if they are placed together half-dried.
- Store paper on a flat surface. Toner may peel when they are folded or creased.
- Avoid storing printouts at high temperatures. Otherwise toner may melt and blot.
- Put printouts in a binder when storing them for a long period of time (two years or longer). (Printouts may discolor when they are stored for a long period of time.)

## **Paper** Source

This printer is supplied with two paper sources: the paper cassette (Cassette 1) and multi-purpose tray. By installing the optional paper feeder (Cassette 2), up to 3 paper sources can be used.

#### Paper Level Indicator

The paper cassette has a paper level indicator (A) that shows the amount of paper remaining in the cassette. If the cassette is full, the paper level indicator is at the top. Because the indicator moves down as the amount of paper drops, this gives a rough estimate of the amount of paper remaining.



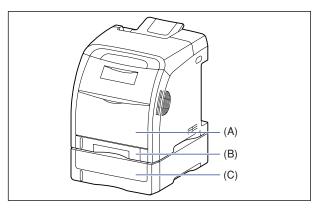
### **Paper Source Type**

This printer has the following paper sources:

(A): Multi-purpose Tray

(B): Cassette 1

(C): Cassette 2 (Optional)



#### **IMPORTANT**

If you are printing from the multi-purpose tray or Cassette 2, make sure that Cassette 1 is set before printing. If you print from the multi-purpose tray or Cassette 2 when Cassette 1 is not set, this will cause paper jams.

## **Paper Capacity of Paper Source**

	Paper Source			
Paper Type	Multi-purpose Tray	Cassette 1	Cassette 2 (Optional)	
Plain paper (20.0 lb Bond (80 g/m²))	Approx. 100 sheets	Approx. 250 sheets	Approx. 500 sheets	
Heavy paper (50.0 lb Cover (128 g/m²))	Approx. 50 sheets	х	х	
Transparency (Black and white printing only)	Approx. 50 sheets	Х	X	
Label	Approx. 40 sheets	Х	х	
Coated paper	Approx. 50 sheets	х	Х	
Envelope	Approx. 10 sheets	Х	х	

### **Selecting a Paper Source**

A paper source can be selected using the following procedure.

#### ■ When printing from Windows or Macintosh

Select a paper source in the printer driver. Because the default setting for the paper selection in the printer driver is set to [Auto], if a paper size is specified by an application, the printer selects the paper source automatically and feeds paper from the paper source. Even when the paper source runs out of paper during printing, if paper of the same size is loaded in other paper source, the paper source is switched automatically and the paper is fed.

If you want to specify a paper source, select the paper source in the printer driver. For details on using the printer driver, see Help of the printer driver.

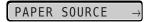
#### ■ When printing from DOS or UNIX

When you are printing from DOS, UNIX, or other operating system on which you cannot use the printer driver, select a paper source using the control panel. The default setting for this printer's paper source is set to AUTO.

Select a paper source with the printer's control panel using the following procedure.



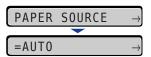
1 Press [Feeder Selection].



PAPER SOURCE is displayed in the display.



Select PAPER SOURCE using [ ◄] and [►], then press [OK].





3 Select the paper source using [◄] and [▶], then press [OK].





- CASSETTE 2 is displayed only when the paper feeder is installed.
- If paper of the same size is loaded in two or more paper sources when the paper source setting is specified to be selected automatically, paper is fed from the upper paper source regardless of the status of the paper source indicators. When the paper source runs out of paper, the paper source automatically switches to other one in which paper of the same size is loaded.

# Precautions for Handling the Multi-purpose Tray or Paper Cassette

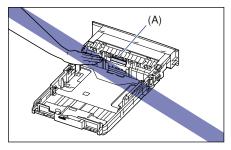
Be careful of the following points when handling the multi-purpose tray or paper cassette.



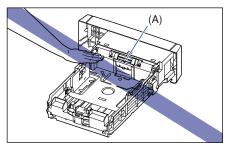
#### **IMPORTANT**

- Do not pull out the paper cassette while the printer is printing. This may result in paper jams or damage to the printer.
- Do not touch the paper in the multi-purpose tray or pull it out during printing. This may result in a faulty operation.
- Refill the paper cassette after all the loaded paper runs out. If the cassette is refilled when paper still remains in the cassette, it may result in misfeeds.
- Do not put anything other than the printing paper on the multi-purpose tray. Also, do not
  press on top of or apply excessive force to the multi-purposes tray. This may result in
  damage to the multi-purpose tray.
- Do not touch the black rubber pad (A) in the paper cassette. This may result in misfeeds.

Cassette 1



Cassette 2



• If you are printing from the multi-purpose tray or Cassette 2, make sure that Cassette 1 is set before printing. If you print from the multi-purpose tray or Cassette 2 when Cassette 1 is not set, this will cause paper jams.



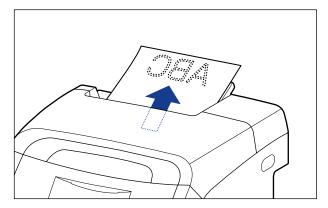
#### NOTE

Remove the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray before closing it. Keep the multi-purpose tray closed when it is not used.

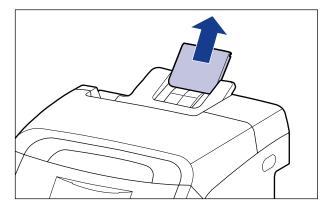
## **Output Tray**

### **Output Tray**

Printed paper is output to the output tray on the top of the printer unit with the printed side facing down. Printed paper is output in order of page.



When outputting Legal size paper to the output tray, pull out the auxiliary tray to prevent the paper from hanging out of the output tray. When you use the auxiliary tray, gently pull it out until it stops.





#### **A** CAUTION

Keep your hands or clothing away from the roller in the output area. Even if the printer is not printing, sudden rotation of the roller may catch your hands or clothing, resulting in personal injury.



During 2-sided printing, do not touch the paper until it is output to the output tray completely. During 2-sided printing, the paper is once output partially after the front side is printed, and then it is fed again to be printed on the reverse side.

## **Paper Capacity of the Output Tray**

Paper Type	Output Tray*	
гарет туре	Output Tray (Face-down)	
Plain paper (20.0 lb Bond (80 g/m²))	Approx. 200 sheets	
Heavy paper (50.0 lb Cover (128 g/m²))	Approx. 40 sheets	
Transparency (Black and white printing only)	Approx. 50 sheets	
Label	Approx. 40 sheets	
Coated paper	Approx. 50 sheets	
Envelope	Approx. 10 sheets	

Actual paper capacity varies depending on the installation environment or paper type.

## **Printing from the Paper Cassette**

The paper cassette can be loaded with plain paper (16.0 to 27.9 lb Bond (60 to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>)) at sizes of A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Foolscap, 16K, and plain paper of custom paper sizes. When the paper cassette runs out of paper, <11 NO "size" PAPER> appears in the display, or the Paper Source indicator blinks indicating the status. Refill the cassette.

This printer comes with a paper cassette (Cassette 1) as standard. Additionally, cassette 2 is added by installing the optional paper feeder.

When printing from the paper cassette, you need to specify the following settings.



#### **IMPORTANT**

- Match the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette and the paper size in the SETUP menu. If they do not match, the message <41 CHK PAPER SZE> appears, and the printing is not performed properly.
- Match the settings for CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) and CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2) in the SETUP menu of the printer and those specified in the printer driver. If they do not match, the message <PC LOAD "size"> appears. In this case, the settings for CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) and CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2) are changed to those in the printer driver by pressing [Online], allowing you to continue printing.
- This printer applies the optimum print mode for the interior of the printer according to the type of the paper loaded in the paper cassette. If the type of the paper loaded in the paper cassette and the setting for the print mode do not match, this may result in crucial damage to the engine.

When printing from Windows or Macintosh using the paper cassette, be sure to match the type of the paper loaded in the paper cassette, the setting for CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2), and the setting for [Paper Type] in the printer driver. If they do not match, the printer stops printing, displaying an error message.

When printing from DOS, UNIX, or other operating system on which the printer driver cannot be used, be sure to match the type of the paper loaded in the paper cassette, the setting for CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2), and the setting for STD PAPER TYPE.



#### ∅ NOTE

If you are printing from an operating system on which the printer driver cannot be used, previously specify the paper source to CASSETTE 1 or CASSETTE 2. (See p. 4-13)

- Loading Paper in the Paper Cassette (See p. 4-19)
- Specifying the Size and Type of the Paper in the Paper Cassette (See p. 4-31, 4-33)

When you changed the size or type of the paper in the paper cassette, specify the following settings using the control panel. You do not need to specify the settings if you do not change the size or type of the paper.

The FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu

- CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) = the size of the loaded paper
- CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2) = the type of the loaded paper

When printing from DOS, UNIX, or other operating system on which the printer driver cannot be used, specify the following settings also.

The FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu

- STD PAPER SIZE (See p. 6-24) = the size of the loaded paper
- STD PAPER TYPE (See p. 6-27) = the type of the loaded paper
- Specifying the Paper Setting in the Printer Driver (See Driver Guide)

When printing from the printer driver, specify the following settings. For details on using the printer driver, see Help of the printer driver.

[Page Setup] Page [Output Size] = the size of the loaded paper

[Paper Source] Page

[Paper Source] = [Cassette 1] or [Cassette 2]

[Paper Type] = [Plain Paper]: Plain Paper (16.0 - 27.9 lb Bond (60 - 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>))

[Plain Paper H]: Specify when you want to give a gloss to plain paper

(19.9 - 27.9 lb Bond (75 - 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>)) to be printed.

[Rough Paper]: Specify when a paper jam occurs or when you want to improve the fixation on printing coarse paper (19.9 - 27.9) lb Bond (75 - 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>)) with [Plain Paper] selected.

### **Precautions on Loading Paper**

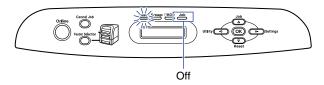
Load paper when the printer status is in any of the following. When the Job indicator is blinking, the printer is printing. Do not pull out the paper cassette.



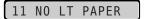
#### **IMPORTANT**

Be sure not to open the covers or paper cassette during printing. The printer may stop, disabling printing.

#### ■ When the Job indicator is off

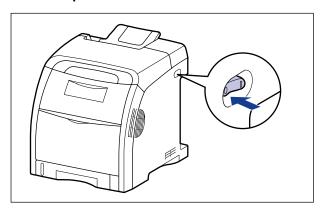


■ When a message that informs you of a paper-out condition or requests paper replacement is displayed



PC LOAD LT

■ When the printer is OFF



### **Loading Paper in the Paper Cassette**

Load paper in the paper cassette. The paper loading methods are different between standard size paper and custom size paper. Therefore, load paper properly using the following procedures.

- When Loading Standard Size Paper (See p. 4-20)
- When Loading Custom Size Paper, Foolscap, or 16K (See p. 4-25)

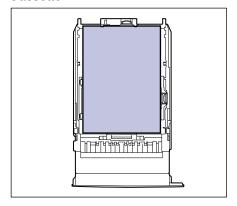
### (T) IM

- For more details on the usable paper, see "Usable Paper," on p. 4-2.
- For details on handling the paper cassette, see "Precautions for Handling the Multi-purpose Tray or Paper Cassette," on p. 4-14.
- Do not load any media other than plain paper (16.0 27.9 lb Bond (60 105 g/m²)) in the paper cassette. This may result in paper jams or damage to the printer.

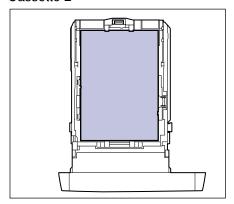
#### When Loading Standard Size Paper

Perform the following procedure to load standard size paper. Be sure to load paper in portrait orientation when loading it in the paper cassette.

#### Cassette 1

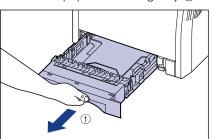


Cassette 2

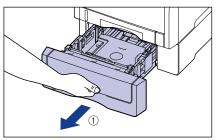


### 1 Pull out the paper cassette.

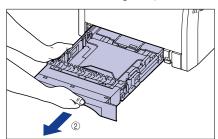
Cassette 1
Pull out the paper cassette gently ①.



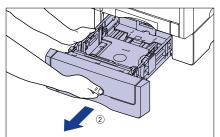
Cassette 2
Pull out the paper cassette gently ①.



While holding the paper cassette with both hands, remove it from the printer unit as shown in the figure ②.



While holding the paper cassette with both hands, remove it from the paper feeder as shown in the figure (2).



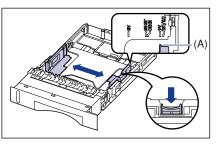
### **A** CAUTION

Be sure to take the paper cassette out of the printer before loading paper. If paper is loaded while the paper cassette is partially pulled out, the paper cassette may drop or the printer may become damaged resulting in personal injury.

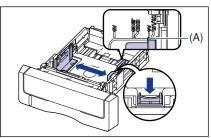
- 2 When changing the size of the paper to be loaded, adjust the length of the paper cassette and change the positions of the paper guides.
  - While holding the lock release lever of the side paper guides, slide the guides to the mark for the size of the paper to be loaded.

The side paper guides move together. Align the position of (A) with the mark for the size of the paper to be loaded.

Cassette 1



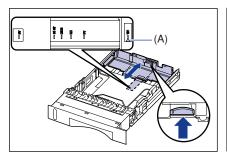
Cassette 2



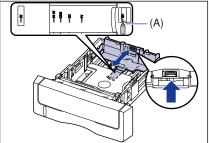
 While holding the lock release lever of the rear paper guide, slide the guide to the size mark for the paper to be loaded.

Align the position of (A) with the mark for the size of the paper to be loaded.

Cassette 1

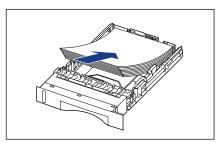


Cassette 2

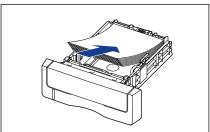


### Load the paper stack so that the rear edge is aligned with the paper guide.

Cassette 1



Cassette 2



#### **A** CAUTION

When loading paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

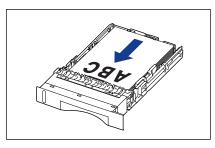
- Be sure to check if the paper guide is at the position of the size of the loaded paper. If the paper guide is set at a wrong position, this may result in misfeeds.
- If you use paper that has been poorly cut, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once. In this case, fan the paper thoroughly, and then align the edges of the stack on a hard, flat surface.



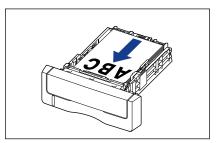
To print letterhead paper or paper printed with a logo, load the paper so that the printing side is facing up, as shown in the following figure.

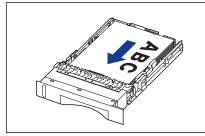
( **:** Feeding direction)

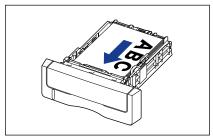
Cassette 1



Cassette 2



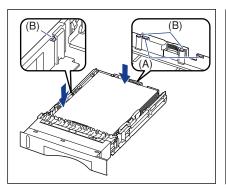




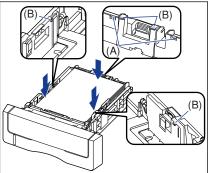
4 Hold down the paper as shown in the figure, make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit marks (A), and then set it under the hooks (B) on the paper guides.

Make sure that there is sufficient space between the hooks of the paper guides and the paper stack. If there is no sufficient space, slightly reduce the amount of paper.

Cassette 1



Cassette 2

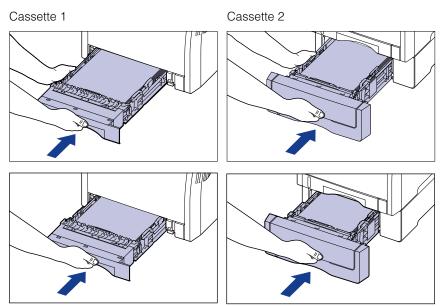


### **IMPORTANT**

The paper capacity of Cassette 1 is approximately 250 sheets of plain paper (20.0 lb Bond (80 g/m<sup>2</sup>)), and that of Cassette 2 is approximately 500 sheets of plain paper (20.0 lb Bond (80 g/m<sup>2</sup>)). Be sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit marks on the paper guides. If the paper stack exceeds the load limit marks, this may result in misfeeds.

### Set the paper cassette in the printer.

Push the paper cassette into the printer firmly until the front side of the paper cassette is flush with the front surface of the printer.



### A CAUTION

When setting the paper cassette in the printer, be careful not to catch your fingers.

This printer's paper cassette cannot automatically detect the paper size. Therefore, you need to register the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette.

For details on registering the paper size, see "Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-31.

### When Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper) or Paper at a Size of Foolscap or 16K

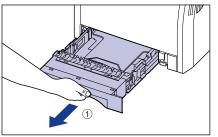
Perform the following procedure to load custom size paper (non-standard size paper) or paper at a size of Foolscap or 16K.

You can load paper of the following custom paper sizes.

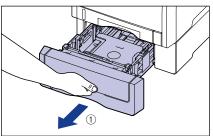
- When loading paper in portrait orientation: Width 5.83 to 8.50 in. (148.0 to 215.9 mm); Length 8.27 to 14.00 in. (210.0 to 355.6 mm)
- When loading paper in landscape orientation (Only when UFR II Printer Driver is used): Width 8.27 to 8.50 in. (210.0 to 215.9 mm); Length 8.27 to 8.50 in. (210.0 to 215.9 mm)

### 1 Pull out the paper cassette.

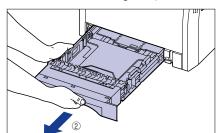
Cassette 1
Pull out the paper cassette gently (1).



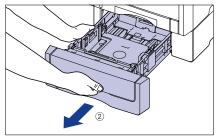
Cassette 2
Pull out the paper cassette gently ①.



While holding the paper cassette with both hands, remove it from the printer unit as shown in the figure ②.



While holding the paper cassette with both hands, remove it from the paper feeder as shown in the figure ②.

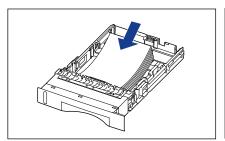


### **A** CAUTION

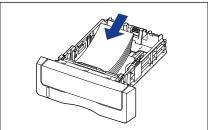
Be sure to take the paper cassette out of the printer before loading paper. If paper is loaded while the paper cassette is partially pulled out, the paper cassette may drop or the printer may become damaged resulting in personal injury.

### 2 Load the paper so that the edge of the paper is aligned with the front side of the paper cassette.

Cassette 1



Cassette 2



#### **A** CAUTION

When loading paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

- If you use paper that has been poorly cut, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once. In this case, fan the paper thoroughly, and then align the edges of the stack on a hard, flat surface.
- When printing custom size paper from UFR II Printer Driver, you can load the paper either in portrait or landscape orientation. However, if you want to print custom size paper of its long edges 8.50 in. (215.9 mm) or less when CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) is set to MIXED SIZES, load the paper in landscape orientation. When you are not printing from UFR II Printer Driver, load the paper in portrait orientation.

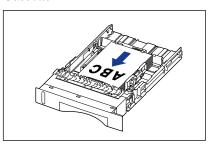


To print letterhead paper or paper printed with a logo, load the paper in the proper orientation according to the following instructions:

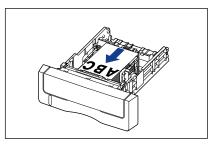
- When loading paper at a size of Foolscap or 16K or loading custom size paper in portrait orientation, load the paper so that the printing side is facing up as shown in the following figure.

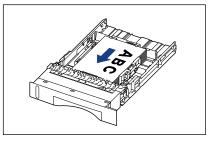
( : Feeding direction)

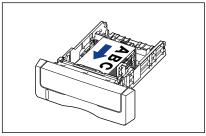
Cassette 1







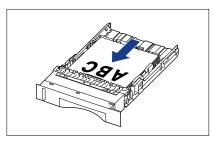




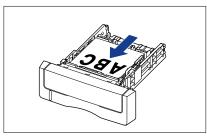
- When loading custom size paper in landscape orientation, load the paper so that the printing side is facing up as shown in the following figure.

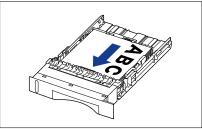
( : Feeding direction)

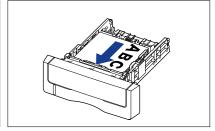
Cassette 1



Cassette 2



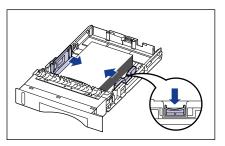




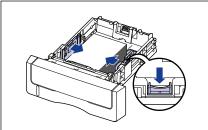
3 While holding the lock release lever of the side paper guides, slide the guides to the mark for the size of the loaded paper.

The side paper guides move together.

Cassette 1

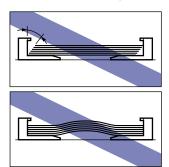


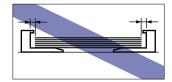
Cassette 2



### (IMPORTANT

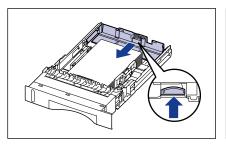
Be sure to align the paper guides with the width of the paper. If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.



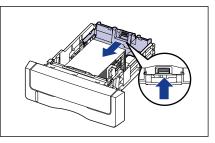


While holding the lock release lever of the rear paper guide, slide the guide to the size mark for the loaded paper.

Cassette 1



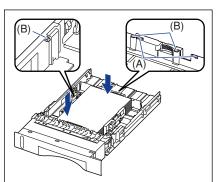
Cassette 2



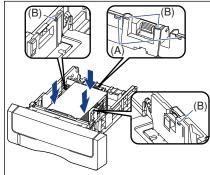
### 5 Hold down the paper as shown in the figure, make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit marks (A), and then set it under the hooks (B) on the paper guides.

Make sure that there is sufficient space between the hooks of the paper guides and the paper stack. If there is no sufficient space, slightly reduce the amount of paper.

#### Cassette 1



Cassette 2



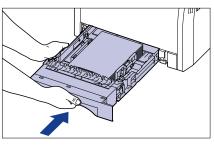
#### **IMPORTANT**

The paper capacity of Cassette 1 is approximately 250 sheets of plain paper (20.0 lb Bond (80 g/m<sup>2</sup>)), and that of Cassette 2 is approximately 500 sheets of plain paper (20.0 lb Bond (80 g/m<sup>2</sup>)). Be sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit marks on the paper guides. If the paper stack exceeds the load limit marks, this may result in misfeeds.

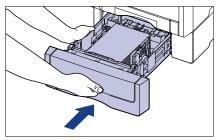
## 6 Set the paper cassette in the printer.

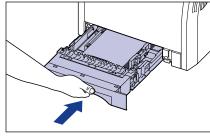
Push the paper cassette into the printer firmly until the front side of the paper cassette is flush with the front surface of the printer.

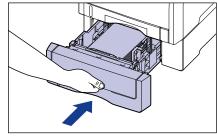
Cassette 1



Cassette 2









#### **CAUTION**

When setting the paper cassette in the printer, be careful not to catch your fingers.

This printer's paper cassette cannot automatically detect the paper size. Therefore, you need to register the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette.

For details on registering the paper size, see "Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-31.

### Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Paper Cassette

This printer's paper cassette cannot automatically detect the paper size. Therefore, specify the paper size of the paper cassette using the control panel when loading paper in the paper cassette. When using standard size paper, specify its size. When loading custom size paper, specify CUSTOM SIZE or CUSTOM SIZE R. The paper size setting for the paper cassette is set to "LTR" by default.

Specify the paper size setting for the paper cassette using the following procedure.

### **IMPORTANT**

- Match the paper size specified in the SETUP menu of the printer and that specified in the printer driver. If they do not match, the message <PC LOAD "size"> appears. In this case, the setting for CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) is changed to that in the printer driver by pressing [Online], allowing you to continue printing.
- When custom size paper is loaded, specify the setting for CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) in the control panel as follows.
  - When the paper is loaded in landscape orientation (Only when UFR II Printer Driver is used): CUSTOM SIZE
  - When the paper is loaded in portrait orientation: CUSTOM SIZE R
- When you change the paper loaded in the paper cassette frequently, it is convenient if you set CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) to MIXED SIZES. When CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) is set to MIXED SIZES, you do not need to change the setting for CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) each time you load different size paper. However, when specifying MIXED SIZES, make sure that the size of the loaded paper matches the paper size specified in the printer driver before printing. If they do not match, the printer may stop printing, displaying the message <41 CHK PAPER SZE>, or a paper jam may occur. Be sure to check if the paper size specified in the printer driver matches the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette before using the printer. However, if SPECIAL MODE J (See p. 6-52) is set to ON, the printer prints without checking the paper size even when the paper size specified in the printer driver and the size of the paper loaded in the cassette do not match.
- When printing custom size paper from UFR II Printer Driver, you can load the paper either in portrait or landscape orientation. However, if you want to print custom size paper of its long edges 8.50 in. (215.9 mm) or less when CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) is set to MIXED SIZES, load the paper in landscape orientation. When you are not printing from UFR II Printer Driver, load the paper in portrait orientation.



The names of the following paper sizes are indicated by an abbreviation. Legal: LGL, Letter: LTR, Executive: EXEC, Foolscap: FLSC



Press [Settings].





Select FEEDER MENU using [ ◀] and [▶], then press [OK].



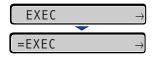


3 Select CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) using [ ◀] and [▶], then press [OK].





4 Select the paper size using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].



"=" is displayed on the left of the paper size, and the paper size for the paper cassette is specified.

Next, specify the paper type of the paper cassette (See the next item).

### Specifying the Type of the Paper in the Paper Cassette

When you loaded paper in the paper cassette, specify CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2) according the paper type using the control panel. The printer applies the appropriate print mode to the paper type. The default value is PLAIN PAPER.

Paper Type	SETUP Menu Setting for CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2)
Plain paper (16.0 - 27.9 lb Bond (60 - 105 g/m²))	PLAIN PAPER
	PLAIN PAPER H*1
	ROUGH PAPER*2

<sup>\*1</sup> Specify when you want to give a gloss to plain paper (19.9 to 27.9 lb Bond (75 to 105 g/m²)) to be printed.

<sup>\*2</sup> Specify when a paper jam occurs or when you want to improve the fixation on printing coarse paper (19.9 to 27.9 lb Bond (75 to 105 g/m²)) with PLAIN PAPER selected.



- Match the paper type specified in the SETUP menu of the printer and that specified in the printer driver. If they do not match, the message <PC LOAD "size"> appears. In this case, the setting for CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2) is changed to that in the printer driver by pressing [Online], allowing you to continue printing.
- If the type of the paper practically loaded in the paper cassette and the setting for CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2) do not match, this may result in crucial damage to the engine. Be sure to match the paper type.

• If CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2) is set to MIXED TYPES, the printer does not check the type of the loaded paper against the paper type specified in the printer driver. Make sure that the paper type specified in the printer driver matches the type of the paper loaded in the paper cassette before using the printer.



Press [Settings].

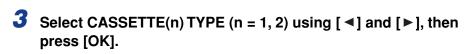


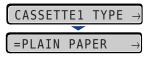


Select FEEDER MENU using [◄] and [▶], then press [OK].











Select the paper type using [◄] and [▶], then press [OK].



"=" is displayed on the left of the paper type, and the paper type of the paper cassette is specified.

When printing from the printer driver on Windows or Macintosh, configure the printer driver. (See Driver Guide)

When printing from DOS or UNIX, specify the settings for STD PAPER SIZE (See p. 6-24) and STD PAPER TYPE (See p. 6-27) using the control panel.

### **Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray**

The multi-purpose tray can be loaded with up to approximately 100 sheets of plain paper (20.0 lb Bond (80 g/m<sup>2</sup>)) at sizes of A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Statement, Foolscap, 16K, Envelope DL, Envelope COM10, Envelope C5. Envelope Monarch, Envelope B5, Index Card, and paper at the following custom paper sizes.

When loading paper in portrait orientation: Width 3.00 to 8.50 in. (76.2 to 215.9) mm); Length 5.00 to 14.00 in. (127.0 to 355.6 mm)

When loading paper in landscape orientation (Only when UFR II Printer Driver is used): Width 5.00 to 8.50 in. (127.0 to 215.9 mm); Length 5.00 to 8.50 in. (127.0 to 215.9 mm)

Paper that cannot be loaded in the paper cassette such as transparencies and envelopes can be loaded in the multi-purpose tray.

When printing from the multi-purpose tray, you need to specify the following settings.



#### IMPORTANT

Match the settings for TRAY PAPER SIZE and TRAY PAPER TYPE in the SETUP menu of the printer and those in the printer driver. If they do not match, the message <PC LOAD "size"> appears. In this case, the settings for TRAY PAPER SIZE and TRAY PAPER TYPE are changed to those in the printer driver by pressing [Online], allowing you to continue printing.



#### NOTE

If you are printing from an operating system on which the printer driver cannot be used, previously specify the paper source to TRAY. (See p. 4-13)

- Loading Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray (See p. 4-36)
- Specifying the Size and Type of the Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray (See p. 4-48 and p. 4-50)

When you changed the size or type of the paper in the multi-purpose tray, specify the following settings using the control panel. You do not need to specify the settings if you do not change the size or type of the paper.

The FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu

- TRAY PAPER SIZE = the size of the loaded paper
- TRAY PAPER TYPE = the type of the loaded paper

When printing from DOS, UNIX, or other operating system on which the printer driver cannot be used, specify the following settings also.

The FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu

- STD PAPER SIZE (See p. 6-24) = the size of the loaded paper
- STD PAPER TYPE (See p. 6-27) = the type of the loaded paper

#### ■ Specifying the Paper Setting in the Printer Driver (See Driver Guide)

When printing from the printer driver, specify the following settings. This manual describes the setting procedure, taking the printer driver for Windows as an example. For details on using the printer driver for Macintosh, see Help of the printer driver.

[Page Setup] Page

[Output Size] = the size of the loaded paper

[Paper Source] Page

[Paper Source] = [Multi-Purpose Tray]

Plain Paper (16.0 - 27.9 lb Bond (60 - 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>)) [Paper Type] = [Plain Paper]:

[Plain Paper H]: Specify when you want to give a gloss to plain paper

(19.9 - 27.9 lb Bond (75 - 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>)) to be printed.

[Heavy Paper 1]: Heavy Paper (28.0 lb Bond - 44.4 lb Cover (106 - 120

 $g/m^2$ )

[Heavy Paper 2]: Heavy Paper (44.5 - 65.1 lb Cover (121 - 176 g/m<sup>2</sup>))

[Heavy Paper 3]: It is not recommended to print on heavy paper that

weighs between 65.2 and 81.4 lb Cover (177 and 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>). However, specify if you have to perform printing.

[Transparency]: Transparencies (Black and white printing only)

[Envelope]: Envelopes

[Coated Paper]: Coated Paper (27.9 lb Bond - 44.4 lb Cover (105 - 120

 $g/m^2$ ))

Labels [Label]:

[Rough Paper]: Specify when a paper jam occurs or when you want to

improve the fixation on printing coarse paper (19.9 -

27.9 lb Bond (75 - 105 g/m2)) with PLAIN PAPER

selected.

### **Loading Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray**

Load paper in the multi-purpose tray. The paper loading procedure varies depending on the paper type. Refer to the respective procedures for each paper type.

- Plain Paper, Heavy Paper, Transparency, Label, Coated Paper (See "When Loading Paper (Other than Envelopes)," on p. 4-37)
- Envelope (See "When Loading Envelopes," on p. 4-43)

### **IMPORTANT**

- For more details on the usable paper, see "Usable Paper," on p. 4-2.
- For details on how to handle the multi-purpose tray, see "Precautions for Handling the Multi-purpose Tray or Paper Cassette," on p. 4-14.

#### When Loading Paper (Other than Envelopes)

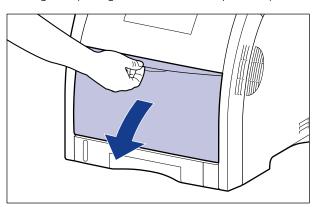
Perform the following procedure to load plain paper, heavy paper, transparencies, labels, or coated paper in the multi-purpose tray.

#### **IMPORTANT**

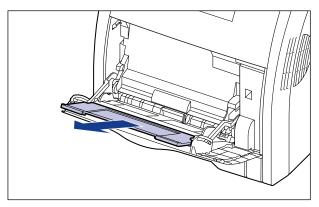
- Transparencies can only be printed in black and white.
- It is not recommended to print on heavy paper that weighs between 65.2 and 81.4 lb Cover (177 and 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>). However, specify the settings for the paper type to "Heavy Paper 3" if you have to perform printing.

### Open the multi-purpose tray.

Holding the opening at the center of the printer, open the multi-purpose tray.



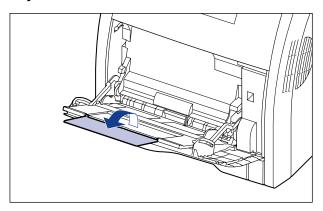
## Pull out the auxiliary tray.



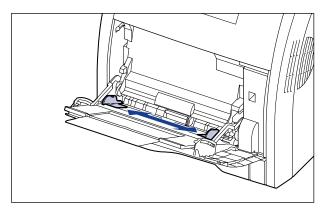
IMPORTANT

Be sure to pull out the auxiliary tray when loading paper in the multi-purpose tray.

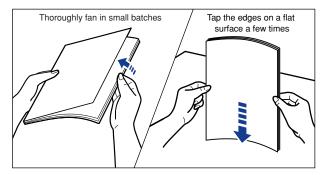
### When loading long-size paper such as Letter etc, open the tray extension.



# Spread the paper guides a little wider than the actual paper width.



# 5 Before loading transparencies, labels, or coated paper, fan them in small batches and align the edges.



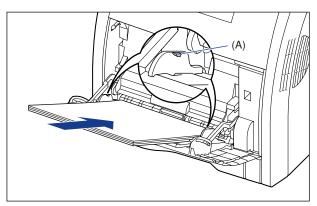
### **A** CAUTION

When loading paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

- Be sure to fan the transparencies, labels, or coated paper thoroughly before loading them. If they are not fanned enough, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once, causing paper jams.
- When fanning or aligning the transparencies or coated paper, try to hold the edges to avoid touching the printing surface.
- Take care not to mark or stain the printing surface of the transparencies or coated paper with fingerprints, dust, or oil. This may result in poor print quality.

# 6 Gently load the stack of paper with the printing side facing down until it touches the back of the tray.

Be sure that the paper stack is loaded under the load limit guides (A).





## **A** CAUTION

When loading paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.



#### IMPORTANT

- The multi-purpose tray can be loaded with up to the number of sheets listed below.
   Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit guides.
- Plain paper: Approx. 100 sheets (When plain paper that weighs 20.0 lb Bond (80 g/m²) is used)
- Heavy paper : Approx. 50 sheets (When heavy paper that weighs 50.0 lb Cover

(128 g/m²) is used)

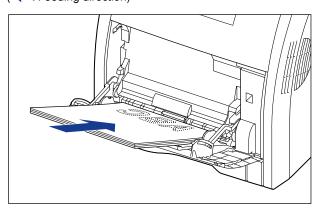
Transparency: Approx. 50 sheets
 Label: Approx. 40 sheets
 Coated paper: Approx. 50 sheets

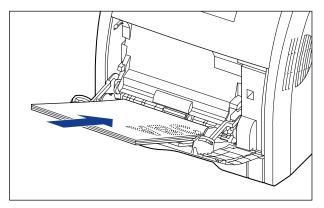
- Load the paper so that it is straight.
- If the rear edge of the paper stack is not properly aligned, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.
- If the paper is curled or folded at corners, flatten it before loading it in the printer.
- If you use paper that has been poorly cut, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once. In this case, fan the paper thoroughly, and then align the edges of the stack on a hard, flat surface.
- When printing custom size paper from UFR II Printer Driver, you can load the paper either in portrait or landscape orientation. However, if you want to print custom size paper of its long edges 8.50 in. (215.9 mm) or less when TRAY PAPER SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES, load the paper in landscape orientation. When you are not printing from UFR II Printer Driver, load the paper in portrait orientation.



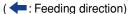
To print letterhead paper or paper printed with a logo, load the paper in the proper orientation according to the following instructions:

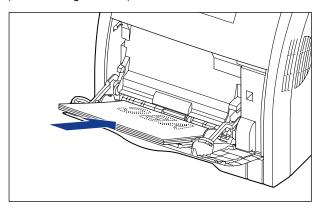
When loading paper at a size of A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Statement, Foolscap, or 16K or loading custom size paper in portrait orientation, load the paper so that the printing side is facing down as shown in the following figure.
 Feeding direction)

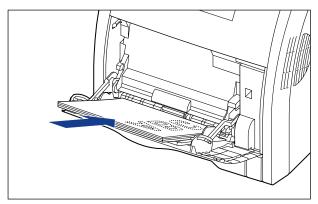




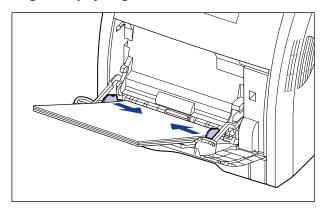
- When loading custom size paper in landscape orientation, load the paper so that the printing side is facing down as shown in the following figure.





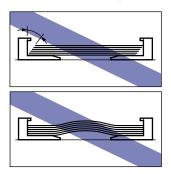


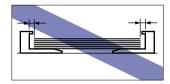
# Align the paper guides with both sides of the stack.



# IMPORTANT

Be sure to align the paper guides with the width of the paper. If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.





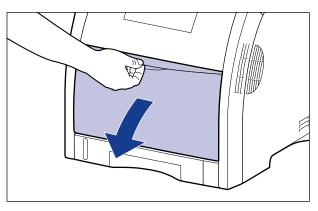
Next, specify the paper size for the multi-purpose tray (See p. 4-48).

## When Loading Envelopes

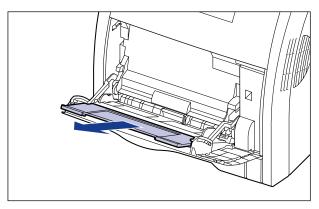
You can load envelopes at sizes of DL, COM10, C5, Monarch, and B5 in the multi-purpose tray. Load envelopes in the multi-purpose tray using the following procedure.

# 1 Open the multi-purpose tray.

Holding the opening at the center of the printer, open the multi-purpose tray.



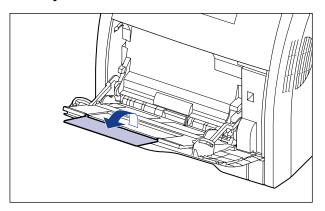
# Pull out the auxiliary tray.



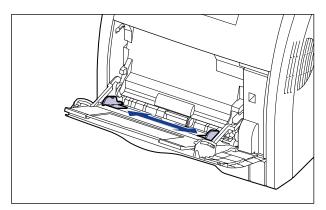
IMPORTANT

Be sure to pull out the auxiliary tray when loading paper in the multi-purpose tray.

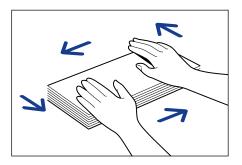
# When loading long-size paper such as Envelope B5 etc, open the tray extension.



Spread the paper guides a little wider than the actual paper width.



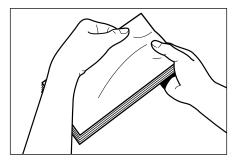
- 5 When loading envelopes, align them as follows.
  - Place the stack of envelopes on a flat surface, flatten them to release any remaining air, and be sure that the edges are pressed tightly.



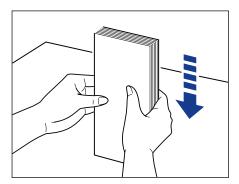
# **A** CAUTION

When loading paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

• Loosen any stiff corners of the envelopes and flatten curls as shown in the figure.

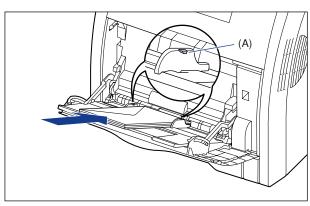


Align the edges of the envelopes on a flat surface.



6 Gently load the stack of envelopes with the printing side facing down until it touches the back of the multi-purpose tray as shown in the figure.

Be sure that the paper stack is loaded under the load limit guides (A).

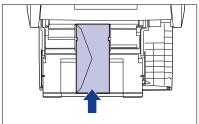




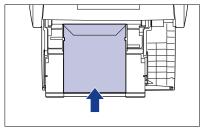
When loading paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

# IMPORTANT

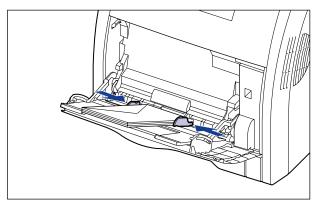
- · Load envelopes as shown in the following figures.
  - ( **:** Feeding direction)
  - Envelope DL/COM10/C5/Monarch Load the envelopes so that the flap is toward the left of the printer when viewed from the front.



Envelope B5
 Close the flaps and load the envelopes so that they are printed from the top (the edge with the flap).

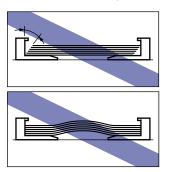


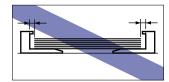
- Up to approximately 10 envelopes can be loaded in the multi-purpose tray. Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit guides.
- You cannot print on the reverse side (glued side) of envelopes.
- 7 Align the paper guides with both sides of the stack.





Be sure to align the paper guides with the width of the paper. If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.





Next, specify the paper size for the multi-purpose tray (See p. 4-48).

# Specifying the Size of the Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray

When you loaded paper in the multi-purpose tray, specify the paper size for the multi-purpose tray using the control panel. When using paper or envelopes of standard size, specify its size. When loading custom size paper, specify CUSTOM SIZE or CUSTOM SIZE R. The paper size setting for the multi-purpose tray is set to "LTR" by default.

Specify the paper size setting for the multi-purpose tray using the following procedure.



#### **IMPORTANT**

- Match the paper size specified in the SETUP menu of the printer and that specified in the printer driver. If they do not match, the message <PC LOAD "size"> appears. In this case, the setting for TRAY PAPER SIZE is changed to that in the printer driver by pressing [Online], allowing you to continue printing.
- When custom size paper is loaded, specify the setting for TRAY PAPER SIZE in the control panel as follows.
  - When the paper is loaded in landscape orientation (Only when UFR II Printer Driver is used): CUSTOM SIZE
  - When the paper is loaded in portrait orientation: CUSTOM SIZE R

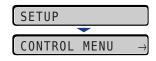
- When you change the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray frequently, it is convenient if TRAY PAPER SIZE in the control panel is set to MIXED SIZES. If TRAY PAPER SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES, you do not need to specify the setting for TRAY PAPER SIZE each time you load different size paper. However, when specifying MIXED SIZES, make sure that the size of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray matches the paper size specified in the printer driver before printing. If they do not match, the printer may stop printing, displaying the message <41 CHK PAPER SZE>, or a paper jam may occur. Be sure to check if the paper size specified in the printer driver matches the size of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray before using the printer. However, if SPECIAL MODE J (See p. 6-52) is set to ON, the printer prints without checking the paper size even when the paper size specified in the printer driver and the size of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray do not match.
- When printing custom size paper from UFR II Printer Driver, you can load the paper either in portrait or landscape orientation. However, if you want to print custom size paper of its long edges 8.50 in. (215.9 mm) or less when TRAY PAPER SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES, load the paper in landscape orientation. When you are not printing from UFR II Printer Driver, load the paper in portrait orientation.



The names of the following paper sizes are indicated by an abbreviation. Legal: LGL, Letter: LTR, Executive: EXEC, Statement: STMT, Foolscap: FLSC



1 Press [Settings].





**2** Select FEEDER MENU using [ ◀] and [▶], then press [OK].







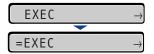
3 Select TRAY PAPER SIZE using [ ◀] and [▶], then press [OK].







# **4** Select the paper size using [ ◀] and [ ▶], then press [OK].



"=" is displayed on the left of the paper size, and the paper size for the multi-purpose tray is specified.

Next, specify the paper type for the multi-purpose tray (See the next item).

# Specifying the Type of the Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray

When you loaded paper in the multi-purpose tray, specify the setting for TRAY PAPER TYPE according the paper type using the control panel. The printer applies the appropriate print mode to the paper type. The default value is PLAIN PAPER.

Paper Type	SETUP Menu Setting for TRAY PAPER TYPE
	PLAIN PAPER
Plain paper (16.0 - 27.9 lb Bond (60 - 105 g/m²))	PLAIN PAPER H*1
	ROUGH PAPER*2
Heavy paper (28.0 lb Bond - 44.4 lb Cover (106 - 120 g/m²))	HEAVY PAPER 1
Heavy paper (44.5 - 65.1 lb Cover (121 - 176 g/m²))	HEAVY PAPER 2
Heavy paper (65.2 - 81.4 lb Cover (177 - 220 g/m²))*3	HEAVY PAPER 3
Transparencies (Black and white printing only)	TRANSPARENCIES
Coated paper (27.9 lb Bond - 44.4 lb Cover (105 - 120 g/m²))	COATED PAPER*4
Labels	LABEL
Envelopes	ENVELOPE

<sup>\*1</sup> Specify when you want to give a gloss to plain paper (19.9 to 27.9 lb Bond (75 to 105 g/m²)) to be printed.

<sup>\*2</sup> Specify when a paper jam occurs or when you want to improve the fixation on printing coarse paper (19.9 to 27.9 lb Bond (75 to 105 g/m²)) with PLAIN PAPER selected.

<sup>\*3</sup> It is not recommended to print on heavy paper that weighs between 65.2 and 81.4 lb Cover (177 and 220 g/m²). However, specify HEAVY PAPER 3 if you have to perform printing.

<sup>\*4</sup> When printing coated paper of 44.5 to 59.2 lb Cover (121 to 160 g/m²), set TRAY PAPER TYPE to COATED PAPER, and then set COATED PAPER in SP.PRINT MODE in the USER MAIN. options to ON.

# IMPORTANT

- Match the paper type specified in the SETUP menu of the printer and that specified in the
  printer driver. If they do not match, the message <PC LOAD "size"> appears. In this
  case, the setting for TRAY PAPER TYPE is changed to that in the printer driver by
  pressing [Online], allowing you to continue printing.
- If the type of the paper practically loaded in the multi-purpose tray and the setting for TRAY PAPER TYPE do not match, this may result in crucial damage to the engine. Be sure to match the paper type.
- If TRAY PAPER TYPE is set to MIXED TYPES, the printer does not check the type of the loaded paper against the paper type specified in the printer driver. Be sure to check if the paper type specified in the printer driver matches the type of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray before using the printer.



1 Press [Settings].





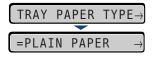
**2** Select FEEDER MENU using [ ◀] and [▶], then press [OK].





ОК

3 Select TRAY PAPER TYPE using [ ◀] and [▶], then press [OK].





Select the paper type using [ ◀] and [ ▶], then press [OK].



"=" is displayed on the left of the paper type, and the paper type for the multi-purpose tray is specified.

When printing from the printer driver on Windows or Macintosh, configure the printer driver. (See Driver Guide)

When printing from DOS or UNIX, specify the settings for STD PAPER SIZE (See p. 6-24) and STD PAPER TYPE (See p. 6-27) using the control panel.

# 2-sided Printing

You can perform 2-sided printing with the standard equipment of this printer. Plain paper, heavy paper (28.0 lb Bond to 44.4 lb Cover (106 to 120 g/m²)), and coated paper (27.9 lb Bond to 44.4 lb Cover (105 to 120 g/m<sup>2</sup>)) at sizes of A4, Legal, Letter, and Foolscap can be used for automatic 2-sided printing.

#### **IMPORTANT**

- You cannot perform automatic 2-sided printing on heavy paper (44.5 to 81.4 lb Cover (121 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>)), transparencies, labels, coated paper (44.5 to 59.2 lb Cover (121 to 160 g/m<sup>2</sup>)), and envelopes.
- When 2-sided printing is specified, and a job with odd number of pages is printed, the printing surface of the last page are as follows according to the setting for ALT.METHOD (See p. 6-34) or the paper source.
- When printing from the paper cassette If ALT.METHOD is set to ON, the printer prints on the upper side of the loaded paper. If ALT.METHOD is set to OFF, the printer prints on the underside of the loaded paper.
- When printing from the multi-purpose trav If ALT.METHOD is set to ON, the printer prints on the underside of the loaded paper. If ALT.METHOD is set to OFF, the printer prints on the upper side of the loaded paper.
- Set ALT.METHOD to OFF when you want to match the setting of the orientation or printing side for the last page with those for its previous page, such as when you want to print previously printed paper etc. whose printing orientation or printing side is fixed.
- During automatic 2-sided printing, do not touch the paper until it is output to the output tray completely. In automatic 2-sided printing, the paper is partially output once after printed on its surface and is fed again to be printed on its reverse side.
- When performing manual 2-sided printing, flatten curls of the paper, and then load one sheet at a time in the multi-purpose tray.



#### ∧ NOTE

Depending on the capacity of the RAM in the printer, the print quality may deteriorate, or the printer may not be able to print, displaying <39 SPL MEM.FULL> when performing automatic 2-sided printing on documents that make heavy use of lines or contain complicated diagrams, charts, or graphs. In this case, you need to print again with GRADATION LEVEL (See p. 6-35) set to HIGH 1 or install an optional expansion RAM module (See p. 1-14).

# Switching Between Automatic 2-sided Printing and 1-sided Printing

Perform automatic 2-sided printing using the following procedure.

### **■** When printing from Windows

When performing automatic 2-sided printing, set [Print Style] in the [Finishing] sheet in the printer driver to [2-sided Printing]. For details on using the printer driver, see Help of the printer driver.

## ■ When printing from Macintosh

When performing automatic 2-sided printing, specify the settings in the printer driver. For details on using the printer driver, see Help of the printer driver.

## ■ When printing from DOS or UNIX

When you are printing from DOS, UNIX, or other operating system on which you cannot use the printer driver, specify the settings using the control panel. Switch between automatic 2-sided printing and 1-sided printing with the printer's control panel using the following procedure.



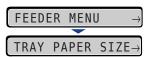
1 Press [Settings].





(OK)

Select FEEDER MENU using [ ◄] and [ ▶], then press [OK].





3 Select 2-SIDED PRINT. using [◄] and [▶], then press [OK].









"=" is displayed on the left of ON, and 2-sided printing is specified.

# **Loading Paper When Performing Automatic 2-sided Printing**

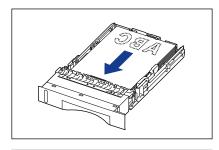
In automatic 2-sided printing, the orientation of the paper you load is opposite to that when performing 1-sided printing because the reverse side of paper is printed first. When printing paper such as that with a letterhead in which faces and printing orientation specified, load the paper using the following procedure:

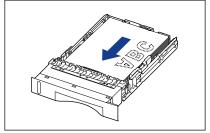
# When Feeding Paper from the Paper Cassette

Load the paper so that the printing side (front side) is facing down, as shown in the following figures.

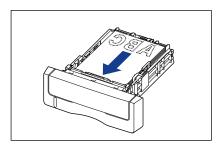
( =: Feeding direction)

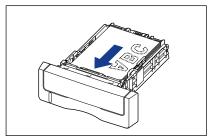
Cassette 1





Cassette 2

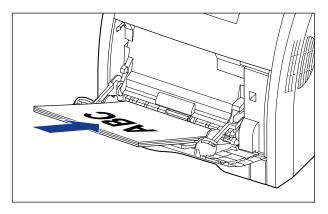


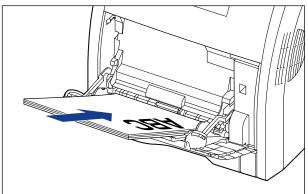


# When Loading Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray

Load the paper so that the printing side (front side) is facing up, as shown in the following figures.

( ←: Feeding direction)





# **Manual 2-sided Printing**

Since this printer can print on the other side of previously printed paper, you can perform 2-sided printing on paper to which automatic 2-sided printing cannot be applied. When printing the other side of previously printed paper, you need to specify the settings using the printer driver or control panel.



#### **IMPORTANT**

Be sure to set MANUAL 2-SIDED (See p. 6-30) to 2ND SIDE before printing the other side of previously printed paper with this printer.

#### ■ When printing from Windows

When printing the other side of previously printed paper, select the [Print on the Other Side] check box in the [Paper Source] dialog box in the printer driver. For details on using the printer driver, see Help of the printer driver.

## ■ When printing from Macintosh

When printing the other side of previously printed paper, specify the settings using the printer driver. For details on using the printer driver, see Help of the printer driver.

#### ■ When printing from DOS or UNIX

When you are printing from DOS, UNIX, or other operating system on which you cannot use the printer driver, set MANUAL 2-SIDED to 2ND SIDE from the control panel. Specify the settings for printing the other side of previously printed paper from the printer's control panel using the following procedure.



1 Press [Settings].





2 Select FEEDER MENU using [ ◀] and [▶], then press [OK].





3 Select MANUAL 2-SIDED using [ ◀] and [▶], then press [OK].





**4** Select 2ND SIDE using [ ◀] and [ ▶], then press [OK].



"=" is displayed on the left of 2ND SIDE, and the settings for printing the other side of previously printed paper are specified.

# **Loading Paper When Performing Manual 2-sided Printing**

When printing on the other side of previously printed paper from the multi-purpose tray, load the paper as shown in the following figures.

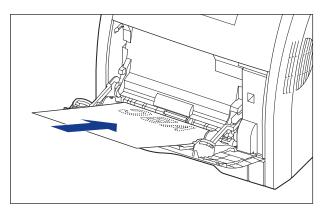


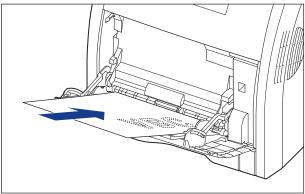
### **IMPORTANT**

When performing manual 2-sided printing, flatten curls of the paper, and then load one sheet at a time in the multi-purpose tray.

■ When loading paper at a size of A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Statement, Foolscap, or 16K or loading custom size paper in portrait orientation

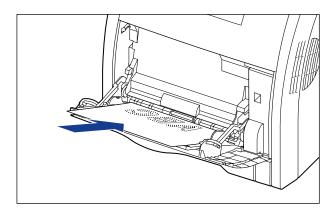
Load the paper so that the printing side is facing down as shown in the following figure. ( =: Feeding direction)

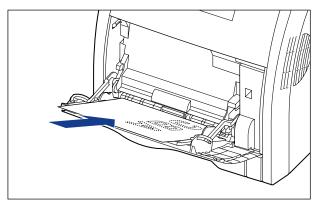




## ■ When loading custom size paper in landscape orientation

Load the paper so that the printing side is facing down as shown in the following figure. ( : Feeding direction)





# The Printing Environment

This chapter describes the functions and categories of the menu displayed in the printer's control panel, how to use the operation keys, and how to view the display.

Menu Functions
Menu Functions
Setting Priority
Menu Categories
Printer Status to Enter the Menu Operation
How to Use the Operation Keys
How to View the Display
Menu Structure
How to View the Display
Menu Functions and Menu Operation5-9
SETUP Menu5-9
UTILITY Menu5-11
JOB Menu
RESET Menu5-13
CANCEL JOB Menu
SELECT FEEDER Menu
Initializing the SETUP Menu5-17

# **Menu Functions**

This section describes the menu functions and their categories.

# **Menu Functions**

Before printing, specify the total print pages, paper size, etc. Generally, these settings are specified in an application or printer driver.

This printer, however, is equipped with many functions as well as the settings for the total print pages and paper size, enabling printing for a wide array of uses. Some settings for this printer cannot be specified by application or printer driver. You can specify these settings using the "menu functions".

You can specify the settings using the menu functions easily because in the menu functions a variety of settings are classified by purpose.

There are the following two kinds of procedures for specifying the menu functions.

## ■ Settings Using the Printer's Control Panel

Specify the settings by pressing the keys while checking the display on the printer.

## ■ Settings Using the Remote UI

Some settings specified by the control panel can be specified by a web browser from your computer.

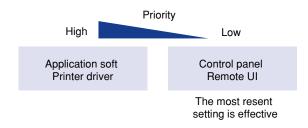


#### NOTE

- For this section, this manual describes only the procedures for specifying the menu functions using the control panel. For details on specifying the settings using the Remote UI. see "Remote UI Guide".
- The settings for the menu functions are registered to the memory (NVRAM) in which data is not deleted normally even if the printer is turned OFF. Therefore, even after cycling the power of the printer, it starts with its settings unchanged from when the printer was turned OFF last time.

# **Setting Priority**

When the setting values for the same option are different between an application or the printer driver and the menu functions, the setting specified in the application or printer driver is effective. When specifying a setting only in the menu functions using the control panel or the Remote UI, the most recently specified setting is effective.



The printer driver and Remote UI are supplied with this printer. For details on using the printer driver or Remote UI, see "Driver Guide", Help of the printer driver, and "Remote UI Guide".

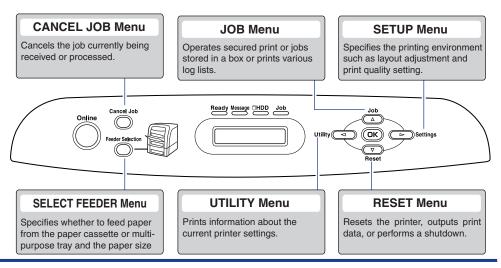
Depending on the settings, they become effective after cycling the power of the printer or performing a hard reset.

# **Menu Categories**

There are the following six categories of the menu.

For the functions and operation procedures, see "Menu Functions and Menu Operation," on p. 5-9.

For details on each menu, see "Chapter6 Printing Environment Settings".



# **Printer Status to Enter the Menu Operation**

You can enter each menu when the printer is in the following status.

:The status that you can enter the menu

X: The status that you cannot enter the menu

	When the printer	When an error is	
	When the printer is online	When the printer is offline	occurring *2
SETUP Menu	○*3	0	0
SELECT FEEDER Menu	0	0	0
RESET Menu	0	0	○* <sup>4</sup>
JOB Menu	0	x	x
UTILITY Menu	0	х	х

<sup>\*1</sup> The printer is ready to print when the Ready indicator is on.

<sup>\*2</sup> An error is occurring in the printer when the Message indicator is on.

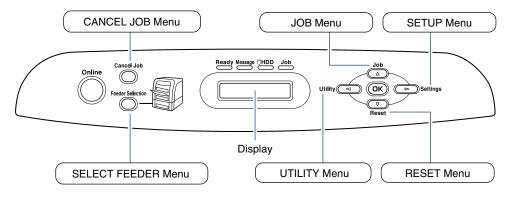
<sup>\*3</sup> You cannot specify the settings in the USER MAIN. options when the printer is in the online status.

<sup>\*4</sup> You cannot specify the settings for FORM FEED.

# **How to Use the Operation Keys**

Use the following keys for the menu operation.

Among the keys, [Setting], [Utility], [Job], [Reset], [Cancel Job], and [Feeder Selection] have the function to display a menu.



## ■ The functions of each key are as follows.

Key	Functions			
Online)	Switches between online and offline. The printer is online when the indicator under the key is on and is offline when the indicator is off. Indicated as [Online] in the manuals.			
(Cancel Job)	When the printer is online	Immediately after placing the printer online	While the menu is displayed	
(Caricer 665)	If pressed when the Job indicator is on or blinking (When data is being processed or received), cancels the job currently being processed. Indicated as [Cancel Job] in the manuals.		Does not function.	
(Feeder Selection Selection)	Displays the SELECT FEEDER menu. Indicated as [Feeder Selection] in the manuals.		Does not function.	

Key	Functions		
Utility)	When the printer is online	Immediately after placing the printer online	While the menu is displayed
(Camy)	Displays the UTILITY menu. Indicated as [Utility] in the manuals.	Does not function.	Displays the next left item in the same hierarchy. When the setting value is numeric, reduces the value. If you keep holding down the key, the speed of the value decreasing is increased depending on the setting value. Indicated as [◄] in the manuals.
(Job)	Displays the JOB menu. Indicated as [Job] in the manuals.	Does not function.	Displays the item of the next upper hierarchy. Indicated as [ \( \blacksquare) \) in the manuals.
(Reset)	Displays the RESET menu. Indicated as [Reset] in the manuals.		Executes the selected item. Otherwise, goes down the hierarchy. Indicated as [v] in the manuals. Has the same function as [OK].
Settings)	Displays the SETUP menu. Indicated as [Settings] in the manuals. However, the USER MAIN. options cannot be specified when the printer is online.		Displays the next right item in the same hierarchy. When the setting value is numeric, increases the value. If you keep holding down the key, the speed of the value increasing is increased depending on the setting value. Indicated as [▶] in the manuals.
(OK)	Does not function.		Executes the selected item. Otherwise, goes down the hierarchy. Indicated as [OK] in the manuals. Has the same function as [v].

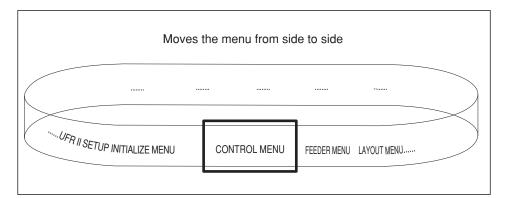
# **How to View the Display**

This section describes the contents of the letters that appear in the display when specifying the menu functions.

# **Menu Structure**

The menu structure looks like a chain (loop structure), and one of the menus on this chain is displayed in the display. Therefore, continuously pressing [◀] or [▶] displays the first menu again.

The menus consist of individual loop structures in each hierarchy.



# **How to View the Display**

Up to 16 characters appear in a line in the display.

After you display a menu by pressing a key, the item of the first hierarchy in the menu appears automatically.

If there is any selectable item in the same hierarchy, "→" appears on the right in the display.



If no action is taken after the lowest hierarchy in the menu is displayed, the item of the next upper hierarchy and that of the currently selected hierarchy are displayed alternately.



"=" is displayed on the left in the display for the currently selected setting.

# **Menu Functions and Menu Operation**

This section describes the overview of the menus and operating procedures for them.

## **SETUP Menu**

This section describes the function of the SETUP menu and the operating procedure for it.

## SETUP Menu Functions

The SETUP menu allows you to configure a variety of printing environment such as printing position, type of character set, and the selection of the interface for connecting the printer to the computer.

Normally, you can configure a printing environment using an application or the printer driver in a computer connected to the printer. However, some settings such as interface configuration can be specified only in the SETUP menu of the printer. Also, you can print using an application in which you cannot specify the print settings or MS-DOS command directly. When you are printing using them, specify the printing environment using the SETUP menu in the printer.



#### NOTE

For more details on the settings, see "SETUP Menu Settings," on p. 6-13.

## Operating Procedure for the SETUP Menu

The SETUP menu consists of three hierarchies: "Option", "Item", and "Setting Value". Select the target options in each hierarchy.

As an example of the setting procedure, this section describes the procedure for setting TRAY PAPER SIZE in the FEEDER MENU options to Executive. Start the key operation from Step 1.

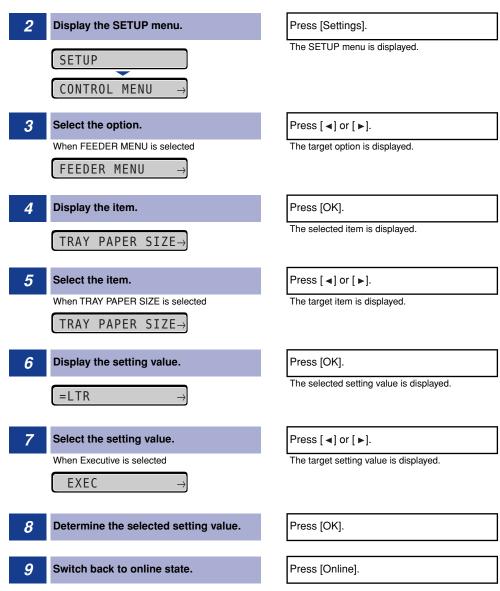
# **Operation Procedure**

**Key Operation** 

Place the printer offline.

Press [Online].

When the printer is online, the SETUP menu can be displayed, however, the USER MAIN. options cannot be specified.





- The printer can switch back to online when it is ready to print. The printer is ready to print when the Ready indicator is on.
- If you press [▲] during the setting, the display goes back up the hierarchy.
- If you press [Online] during the setting, the setting is canceled.
- In some options, the settings are divided into two different hierarchies.

## **UTILITY Menu**

This section describes the function of the UTILITY menu and the operating procedure for it.

## **UTILITY Menu Functions**

The UTILITY menu allows you to print the settings for the SETUP menu or perform cleaning.



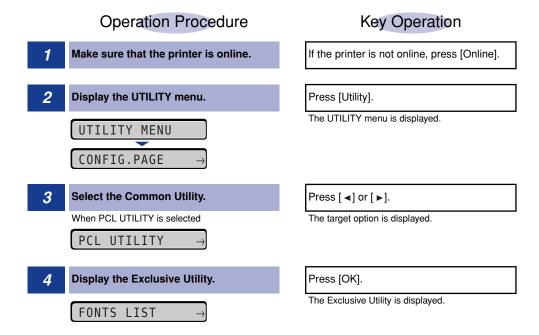
#### NOTE

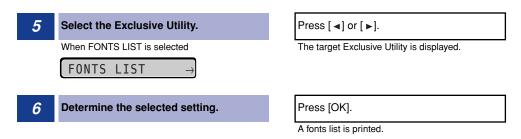
For more details on the settings, see "UTILITY Menu Settings," on p. 6-62.

# Operating Procedure for the UTILITY Menu

The UTILITY menu consists of two hierarchies: "Common Utilities" and "Exclusive Utilities". Select the target options in each hierarchy. Exclusive Utilities are displayed only when PCL UTILITY is displayed in the hierarchy of Common Utilities.

This section describes the procedure for printing FONTS LIST in PCL UTILITY as an example. Start the key operation from Step 1.







- If you did not select the Exclusive Utility (PCL UTILITY), Step 4 to 5 are omitted.
- If you press [▲] during the setting, the display goes back up the hierarchy.
- If you press [Online] during the setting, the setting is canceled.

## JOB Menu

This section describes the function of the JOB menu and the operating procedure for it.

## JOB Menu Functions

The JOB menu allows you to print secured print jobs, the jobs stored in a box, and various kinds of log lists.

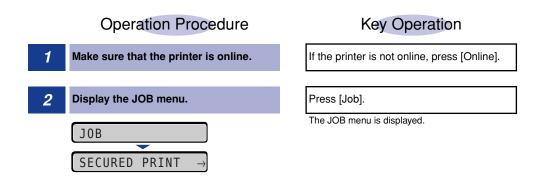


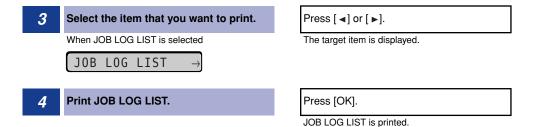
#### NOTE

For more details on the settings, see "JOB Menu Settings," on p. 6-65.

# Operating Procedure for the JOB Menu

This section describes the procedure for printing JOB LOG LIST. Start the key operation from Step 1.







If you press [Online] during the setting, the setting is canceled.

## RESET Menu

This section describes the function of the RESET menu and the operating procedure for it.

## RESET Menu Functions

The RESET menu allows you to reset the printer (soft reset and hard reset), output any print data remaining in the printer memory, and perform SHUT DOWN to turn the printer OFF when using the hard disk.

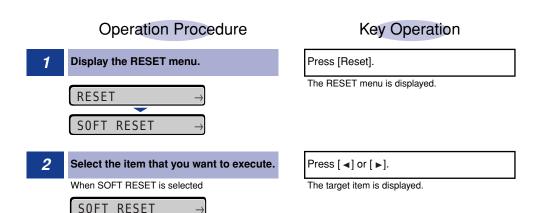


## **⊘** NOTE

For more details on the settings, see "RESET Menu Settings," on p. 6-69.

# Operating Procedure for the RESET Menu

This section describes the procedure for executing SOFT RESET as an example. Start the key operation from Step 1.



Press [OK].

A soft reset is performed.



#### NOTE

HARD RESET is displayed after you keep holding down [OK] 3 seconds or more when SOFT RESET is displayed in the display.

# **CANCEL JOB Menu**

This section describes the function of the CANCEL JOB menu and the operating procedure for it.

### CANCEL JOB Menu Functions

The CANCEL JOB menu allows you to cancel only the job currently being received or processed.

Pressing [Cancel Job] and [OK] on the control panel while the job you want to cancel is being processed starts the cancel job process.



#### **IMPORTANT**

- Cancel the job while the printer is processing the data (While the Job indicator is on or blinking). No job is canceled by pressing [Cancel Job] when the Job indicator is off.
- The data that has already been processed and is being printed (started to be fed) cannot be canceled. In this case, the next print data may be canceled.
- When there is any print data sent from a printer driver other than that for this printer, multiple data may be canceled.



#### NOTE

When canceling a job, you may not be able to cancel the job even if <03 CANCELING JOB> is displayed. The secure print job before entering the password and the job to be stored in the box cannot be canceled. Delete the secure print job before entering the password and the job to be stored in the box with the Remote UI. (See Remote UI Guide)

## Operating Procedure for the CANCEL JOB Menu

Pressing [Cancel Job] and [OK] on the control panel while the job you want to cancel is being processed displays <03 CANCELING JOB> starts the cancel job process. Start the key operation from Step 1.

## **Operation Procedure**

**Key Operation** 

1

Cancel the job while the job is being processed.

Press [Cancel Job].

CANCEL?

Execute the job cancel process.

03 CANCELING JOB

Press [OK].

Pressing [OK] starts the job cancel process. When not executing the cancel job process, press any key other than [OK]. After completing the job cancel, the printer is ready to print.

# SELECT FEEDER Menu

This section describes the function of the SELECT FEEDER menu and the operating procedure for it.

## **SELECT FEEDER Menu Functions**

The SELECT FEEDER menu allows you to select the paper source, paper size, etc. After a paper source is selected, the corresponding Paper Source indicator comes on.



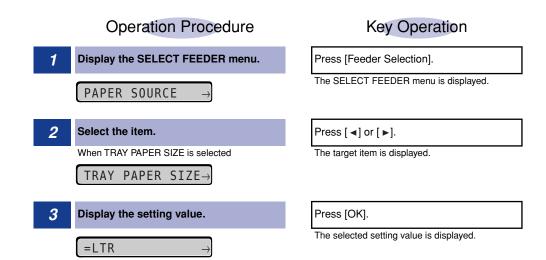
### ∅ NOTE

For more details on the settings, see "SELECT FEEDER Menu Settings," on p. 6-71.

# Operating Procedure for the SELECT FEEDER Menu

The SELECT FEEDER menu consists of two hierarchies: "Item" and "Setting Value". Select the target items in each hierarchy.

As an example of the setting procedure, this section describes the procedure for setting TRAY PAPER SIZE to Executive. Start the key operation from Step 1.

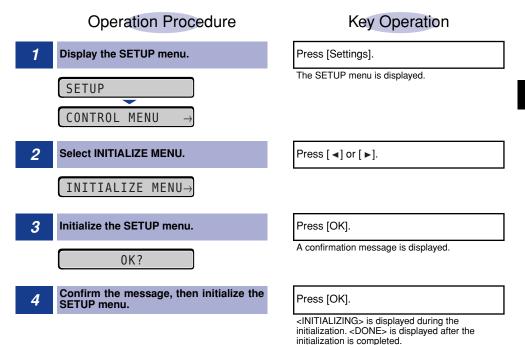


4	Select the setting value.	Press [ <b>◄</b> ] or [ <b>▶</b> ].
	When Executive is selected	The target setting value is displayed.
	$EXEC \qquad \rightarrow$	
5	Determine the selected setting value.	Press [OK].

# **Initializing the SETUP Menu**

Initialization of the SETUP menu resets the settings specified in the SETUP menu to the default settings.

Initialize the menu by selecting INITIALIZE MENU in the hierarchy of "Options" in the SETUP menu. Start the key operation from Step 1.



- **IMPORTANT** 
  - If the message <INITIALIZE FAIL> appears when the initialization of the SETUP menu is executed, the SETUP menu is not initialized.
  - Do not turn the printer OFF during the initialization. The printer memory may be damaged.
  - Some settings do not become effective unless you cycle the power of the printer or perform a hard reset.

### NOTE

- If you press [Online] during the setting, the setting is canceled. However, you cannot cancel the setting when <INITIALIZING> is displayed even if you press [Online].
- ADJ.START POS. in the USER MAIN options and NETWORK MENU in the INTERFACE MENU options in the SETUP menu cannot be initialized.

# **Printing Environment Settings**



This chapter describes the options that you can specify on the printer's control panel.

Setting Items	6-2
SETUP Menu	6-2
UTILITY Menu	6-10
JOB Menu	6-11
RESET Menu.	6-11
SELECT FEEDER Menu	6-12
SETUP Menu Settings	6-13
CONTROL MENU Options	
FEEDER MENU Options	6-22
LAYOUT MENU Options	6-31
QUALITY MENU Options	6-35
INTERFACE MENU Options	6-45
USER MAIN. Options	6-51
PCL SETUP Options	6-56
UFR II SETUP Options	6-61
UTILITY Menu Settings	6-62
JOB Menu Settings	6-65
RESET Menu Settings	6-69
SELECT FEEDER Menu Settings	6-71

# **Setting Items**

# **SETUP Menu**

# **■ CONTROL MENU Options**

Item	Setting Value	Applicable Page
POWER SAVE MODE	ON*, OFF, PANEL OFF	p. 6-13
PWR SAVE IN ERR	ON*, OFF	p. 6-14
POWER SAVE TIME	30 minutes*, 60 minutes, 180 minutes, 5 minutes, 15 minutes	p. 6-14
WARNING STEP	CHECK TONER: CONT.PRINTING*, STOP PRINTING	p. 6-14
AUTO ERROR SKIP	OFF*, ON	p. 6-15
PANEL LANGUAGE	ENGLISH*, FRENCH, GERMAN, ITALIAN, SPANISH	p. 6-15
SHOW WARNINGS	CHECK TONER: ON*, OFF CASSETTE EMPTY: ON*, OFF	p. 6-15
DATE AND TIME		
DATE SETTING	01/01/2001 to 12/31/2089	p. 6-16
TIME SETTING	00:00:00 to 23:59:59	p. 6-16
DAYLIGHT SAVING	DST SETTINGS: OFF*, ON START DATE: <month>, <week>, <day>, <time setting=""> END DATE: <month>, <week>, <day>, <time setting=""></time></day></week></month></time></day></week></month>	p. 6-17
TIME ZONE	GMT-12:00 to GMT+12:00	p. 6-17
TIMER SETTINGS		•
WAKE UP TIMER	OFF*, ON	p. 6-17
WAKE UP TIME	00:00 to 23:59	p. 6-18
POW. SAVE TIMER	OFF*, ON	p. 6-18

POWER SAVE TIME	00:00 to 23:59	p. 6-19
CALIBRATE TIMER	OFF*, ON	p. 6-19
CALIBRATE TIME	00:00 to 23:59	p. 6-19
HARD DISK*1	ON*, OFF	p. 6-19
INTERRUPT PRINT*1	ON*, OFF	p. 6-20
SECURING TIME*1	1 hour*, 2 hours, 3 hours, 6 hours, 12 hours, 24 hours	p. 6-20
SECURED TYPE*1	IMAGE*, PDL	p. 6-21
RIP ONCE*1	ON*, OFF	p. 6-21
ASSURE JOB LOG*1	OFF*, ON	p. 6-22

## **■ FEEDER MENU Options**

Item	Setting Value	Applicable Page
TRAY PAPER SIZE	LTR*, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZE R, ENV. ISO-C5, ENV. COM10, ENV. MONARCH, ENV. DL, ENV. ISO-B5, INDEX CARD, STMT, FLSC, 16K, A5, B5, A4	p. 6-22
CASSETTE1 SIZE	LTR*, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZE R, FLSC, 16K, A5, B5, A4	p. 6-23
CASSETTE2 SIZE*1	LTR*, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZE R, FLSC, 16K, A5, B5, A4	p. 6-23
STD PAPER SIZE	LTR*, LGL, EXEC, ENV. ISO-C5, ENV. COM10, ENV. MONARCH, ENV. DL, ENV. ISO-B5, INDEX CARD, STMT, FLSC, 16K, A5, B5, A4	p. 6-24
TRAY PRIORITY	OFF*, ON	p. 6-25
INVLDPAPER TRAY	OFF*, ON	p. 6-26
AUTO SELECTION	TRAY: ON*, OFF CASSETTE 1: ON*, OFF CASSETTE 2*1: ON*, OFF	p. 6-26

<sup>\*1</sup> May not be displayed depending on the availability of the optional accessories and other settings.

STD PAPER TYPE	PLAIN PAPER*, PLAIN PAPER H, HEAVY PAPER 1, HEAVY PAPER 2, HEAVY PAPER 3, TRANSPARENCIES, ENVELOPE, COATED PAPER, LABEL, ROUGH PAPER	p. 6-27
TRAY PAPER TYPE	PLAIN PAPER*, PLAIN PAPER H, HEAVY PAPER 1, HEAVY PAPER 2, HEAVY PAPER 3, TRANSPARENCIES, ENVELOPE, COATED PAPER, LABEL, ROUGH PAPER, MIXED TYPES	p. 6-27
CASSETTE1 TYPE	PLAIN PAPER*, PLAIN PAPER H, ROUGH PAPER, MIXED TYPES	p. 6-29
CASSETTE2 TYPE*1	PLAIN PAPER*, PLAIN PAPER H, ROUGH PAPER, MIXED TYPES	p. 6-29
MANUAL 2-SIDED	1ST SIDE*, 2ND SIDE	p. 6-30
2-SIDED PRINT.	OFF*, ON	p. 6-30

## **■ LAYOUT MENU Options**

Item	Setting Value	Applicable Page
COPIES	1 to 9999; 1*	p. 6-31
OFFSET Y	-1.97 to 1.97; 0.00* (in.)	p. 6-31
OFFSET X	-1.97 to 1.97; 0.00* (in.)	p. 6-31
BIND.LOCATION	LONG EDGE*, SHORT EDGE	p. 6-32
GUTTER	-1.97 to 1.97; 0.00* (in.)	p. 6-33
ALT.METHOD	ON*, OFF	p. 6-34

An asterisk (\*) indicates the default setting.

<sup>\*1</sup> May not be displayed depending on the availability of the optional accessories and other settings.

# ■ QUALITY MENU Options

Item	Setting Value	Applicable Page
GRADATION LEVEL	HIGH 1*, HIGH 2	p. 6-35
TONER SAVE	OFF*, ON	p. 6-35
DENSITY: CYAN	1 to 16; 8*	p. 6-36
DENSITY: MAGENTA	1 to 16; 8*	p. 6-37
DENSITY: YELLOW	1 to 16; 8*	p. 6-37
DENSITY: BLACK	1 to 16; 8*	p. 6-37
COLOR MODE	AUTO*, COLOR, BLACK & WHITE	p. 6-38
HALFTONES		
B & W HALFTONES	TEXT: HIGH RESOL.*, RESOLUTION, GRADATION, COLOR TONE GRAPHICS: GRADATION*, COLOR TONE, HIGH RESOL., RESOLUTION IMAGE: GRADATION*, COLOR TONE, HIGH RESOL., RESOLUTION	p. 6-38
COLOR HALFTONES	TEXT: HIGH RESOL.*, RESOLUTION, GRADATION, COLOR TONE GRAPHICS: GRADATION*, COLOR TONE, HIGH RESOL., RESOLUTION IMAGE: GRADATION*, COLOR TONE, HIGH RESOL., RESOLUTION	p. 6-39
GRAY COMPENSATE	TEXT: ON*, OFF GRAPHICS: ON*, OFF IMAGE: ON*, OFF	p. 6-39
CMS		
CMS SELECTION	PRINTER*, HOST	p. 6-40
CMS/GAMMA	TEXT: CMS*, GAMMA GRAPHICS: CMS*, GAMMA IMAGE: CMS*, GAMMA	p. 6-40

RGB SRCE PROF.	TEXT:  sRGB_v1.31*, HDTV_gamma_1.5,  HDTV_gamma_1.8, HDTV_gamma_2.4,  Download Profile*1  GRAPHICS:  sRGB_v1.31*, HDTV_gamma_1.5,  HDTV_gamma_1.8, HDTV_gamma_2.4,  Download Profile*1  IMAGE:  sRGB_v1.31*, HDTV_gamma_1.5,	p. 6-41
OUTPUT PROFILE	HDTV_gamma_1.8, HDTV_gamma_2.4, Download Profile*1  TEXT: Normal*, Photo GRAPHICS: Normal*, Photo IMAGE: Photo*, Normal	p. 6-42
MATCHING METHOD	TEXT: SATURATION*, COLORIMETRIC, PERCEPTUAL GRAPHICS: PERCEPTUAL*, SATURATION, COLORIMETRIC IMAGE: PERCEPTUAL*, SATURATION, COLORIMETRIC	p. 6-42
GAMMA	TEXT: 1.4*, 1.8, 2.2, 1.0 GRAPHICS: 1.4*, 1.8, 2.2, 1.0 IMAGE: 1.4*, 1.8, 2.2, 1.0	p. 6-43
QUALITY CHANGE	CONT.PRINTING*, STOP PRINTING	p. 6-44

## **■ INTERFACE MENU Options**

Item	Setting Value	Applicable Page
I/F CONNECTION	PARALLEL: ON*, OFF USB: ON*, OFF NETWORK: ON*, OFF EXT.INTERFACE*1: ON*, OFF	p. 6-45
MODE TIMEOUT	OFF, 5 to 300 seconds; 15 seconds*	p. 6-45

<sup>\*1</sup> May not be displayed depending on the availability of the optional accessories and other settings.

NETWORK MENU*1		
TCP/IP SETTINGS	IP MODE:  MANUAL*, AUTO PROTOCOL*1:  DHCP	p. 6-47
APPLETALK	OFF*, ON	p. 6-48

SMB	SMB SERVER: OFF*, ON SMB*1: OFF*, ON	p. 6-48
SNMP	ON*, OFF	p. 6-48
SPOOLER*1	OFF*, ON	p. 6-49
START WAIT TIME	0 to 300 seconds; 0 seconds*	p. 6-49
REMOTE UI SET.	REMOTE UI: ON*, OFF SSL*1: OFF*, ON	p. 6-49
ETHERNET DRIVER	AUTO DETECT: ON*, OFF COMM.MODE*1: HALF DUPLEX*, FULL DUPLEX ETHERNET TYPE*1: 10 BASE-T*, 100 BASE-TX MAC ADDRESS: (Display only)	p. 6-49
INIT.N/W SET.	-	p. 6-50
EXT.I/F MENU*1	-	p. 6-50
CONNECT.RECOG.	ON*, OFF	p. 6-50
EXT.RX BUFFER*1	OFF*, ON	p. 6-51

## **■ USER MAIN. Options**

Item	Setting Value	Applicable Page
ADJ.START POS.	OFFSET Y (TRAY): -0.20 to 0.20; 0.00* (in.) OFFSET X (TRAY): -0.09 to 0.09; 0.00* (in.) OFFSET Y (CASS1): -0.20 to 0.20; 0.00* (in.) OFFSET X (CASS1): -0.09 to 0.09; 0.00* (in.) OFFSET Y (CASS2)*1: -0.20 to 0.20; 0.00* (in.) OFFSET X (CASS2)*1: -0.09 to 0.09; 0.00* (in.) OFFSET Y (DUP.): -0.20 to 0.20; 0.00* (in.) OFFSET X (DUP.): -0.09 to 0.09; 0.00* (in.)	p. 6-51
RECVRY PRINTING	ON*, OFF	p. 6-52
SPECIAL MODE J	OFF*, ON	p. 6-52

<sup>\*1</sup> May not be displayed depending on the availability of the optional accessories and other settings.

SUBSTITUTE SIZE	OFF*, ON	p. 6-53
SP.IMAGE MODE	OFF*, LEVEL1, LEVEL2	p. 6-53
HDD MAINTENANCE*1		
HDD ALL ERASE	OFF*, ON	p. 6-54
QUICK FORMAT*1	-	p. 6-54
STD FORMAT	-	p. 6-55
SP.PRINT MODE		
COATED PAPER	OFF*, ON	p. 6-55
CURL ADJUSTMENT	OFF*, ON	p. 6-55
UPDATE FIRMWARE		
USB	-	p. 6-56
NETWORK	-	p. 6-56
1ST CALIBRATION	AFTER JOBS*, IMMEDIATELY	p. 6-56

# **■ PCL SETUP Options**

Item	Setting Value	Applicable Page
PAPER SAVE	OFF*, ON	p. 6-56
ORIENTATION	PORTRAIT*, LANDSCAPE	p. 6-57
FONT NUMBER	0 to 89; 0*	p. 6-57
POINT SIZE*1	4.00 to 999.75 point; 12.00 point*	p. 6-57
PITCH* <sup>1</sup>	0.44 to 99.99 cpi; 10.00 cpi*	p. 6-58
FORM LINES	5 to 128 lines; 60 lines*	p. 6-58
SYMBOL SET	PC8*, ROMAN8, ROMAN9, ISOL1, ISOL2, ISOL5, ISOL6, ISOL9, PC775, PC8DN, PC850, PC852, PC858, PC8TK, PC1004, WINL1, WINL2, WINL5, WINBALT, DESKTOP, PSTEXT, LEGAL, ISO4, ISO6, ISO11, ISO15, ISO17, ISO21, ISO60, ISO69, WIN 30, MCTEXT	p. 6-58
CUSTOM SIZE	DO NOT SET*, SET	p. 6-58

<sup>\*1</sup> May not be displayed depending on the availability of the optional accessories and other settings.

UNIT OF MEASURE*1	Inches*, Millimeters	p. 6-58
X DIMENSION*1	3.00 to 8.50 in; 8.50 in* (76.2 to 215.9 mm; 215.9 mm*)	p. 6-59
Y DIMENSION*1	5.00 to 14.00 in; 14.00 in* (127.0 to 355.6 mm; 355.6 mm*)	p. 6-59
APPEND CR TO LF	NO*, YES	p. 6-59
ENLRG A4 WIDTH	OFF*, ON	p. 6-60

## **■ UFR II SETUP Options**

Item	Setting Value	Applicable Page
PAPER SAVE	ON*, OFF	p. 6-61

An asterisk (\*) indicates the default setting.

Item	Setting Value	Applicable Page
CONFIG.PAGE	-	p. 6-62
PCL UTILITY	FONTS LIST	p. 6-62
CLEANING	-	p. 6-63
NW STATUS PRINT	-	p. 6-63
EXT.I/F PRINT*1	-	p. 6-63
CALIBRATION	COLOR REGIS.ADJ, DENSITY CONTROL, DEN.MEDIAN CONT, FULL CALIBRATE	p. 6-63
PRNTPOSNPRINT	-	p. 6-64

<sup>\*1</sup> May not be displayed depending on the availability of the optional accessories and other settings.

# JOB Menu

Item	Setting Value	Applicable Page
ENCRYPTED PRINT*1	-	p. 6-65
SECURED PRINT*1	-	p. 6-66
STOREJOB LIST*1	-	p. 6-67
STOREJOB PRINT*1	-	p. 6-67
JOB LOG LIST	-	p. 6-68
STORE LOG LST*1	-	p. 6-68
REPORTLOG LST	-	p. 6-68

<sup>\*1</sup> May not be displayed depending on the availability of the optional accessories and other settings.

# **RESET Menu**

Item	Setting Value	Applicable Page
SOFT RESET/HARD RESET	-	p. 6-69
FORM FEED	-	p. 6-69
SHUT DOWN*1	-	p. 6-70

<sup>\*1</sup> May not be displayed depending on the availability of the optional accessories and other settings.

# SELECT FEEDER Menu

Item	Setting Value	Applicable Page
PAPER SOURCE	AUTO*, CASSETTE 1, CASSETTE 2*1, TRAY	p. 6-71
TRAY PAPER SIZE	LTR*, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZE R, ENV. ISO-C5, ENV. COM10, ENV. MONARCH, ENV. DL, ENV. ISO-B5, INDEX CARD, STMT, FLSC, 16K, A5, B5, A4	p. 6-72
CASSETTE1 SIZE	LTR*, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZE R, FLSC, 16K, A5, B5, A4	p. 6-72
CASSETTE2 SIZE*1	LTR*, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZE R, FLSC, 16K, A5, B5, A4	p. 6-72
TRAY PAPER TYPE	PLAIN PAPER*, PLAIN PAPER H, HEAVY PAPER 1, HEAVY PAPER 2, HEAVY PAPER 3, TRANSPARENCIES, ENVELOPE, COATED PAPER, LABEL, ROUGH PAPER, MIXED TYPES	p. 6-72
CASSETTE1 TYPE	PLAIN PAPER*, PLAIN PAPER H, ROUGH PAPER, MIXED TYPES	p. 6-72
CASSETTE2 TYPE*1	PLAIN PAPER*, PLAIN PAPER H, ROUGH PAPER, MIXED TYPES	p. 6-72
2-SIDED PRINT.	OFF*, ON	p. 6-73

An asterisk (\*) indicates the default setting.

<sup>\*1</sup> May not be displayed depending on the availability of the optional accessories and other settings.

# **SETUP** Menu Settings

# CONTROL MENU Options

#### POWER SAVE MODE

ON\*, OFF, PANEL OFF

Specifies whether the printer should use Power Save Mode.

There are two types of Power Save Mode, and the type of the mode the printer enters depends on the setting for this item.

Setting Value	Power Save Mode the Printer Can Enter
ON	Power Save Mode 1 (the Panel Off mode) Power Save Mode 2 (the Printer Power Save mode)
OFF	The printer does not enter Power Save Mode.
PANEL OFF	Power Save Mode 1 (the Panel Off mode)

Power Save Mode consumes less power during the sleep state. While the printer is in Power Save Mode, the display on the control panel is off, and the following indicators are on.

Printer Status	Indicator that Comes On
When the printer is online	Ready Indicator
When the printer is offline	Message Indicator



- For details on Power Save Mode, see "Power Saving (Power Save Mode)," on p. 3-2.
- You can specify whether the printer should enter Power Save Mode when an error is occurring in the printer (when the Message indicator is on, or the number in the message blinks). (See "PWR SAVE IN ERR": the next item)

#### PWR SAVE IN ERR

#### ON\*, OFF

Specifies whether the printer should enter Power Save Mode when an error is occurring in the printer (when the Message indicator is on, or the number in the message blinks).

If this item is set to ON, the printer enters Power Save Mode even when an error is occurring in the printer.

If this item is set to OFF, the printer does not enter Power Save Mode when an error is occurring in the printer.

#### POWER SAVE TIME

30 minutes\*, 60 minutes, 180 minutes, 5 minutes, 15 minutes

Specifies the time interval until the printer enters Power Save Mode 1 (the Panel Off mode).



#### ∧ NOTE

- If the printer is in any of the following status, the printer does not enter Power Save Mode (the Panel Off mode) even when the specified time has elapsed.
- An error is occurring in the printer (when the Message indicator is on, or the number in the message blinks), and PWR SAVE IN ERR is set to OFF.
- During the printer's startup
- During a shutdown (Only when the hard disk is installed)
- While the hard disk is being initialized (Only when the hard disk is installed)

#### WARNING STEP

#### CHECK TONER ...... CONT.PRINTING\*. STOP PRINTING

Specifies whether the printer should continue or stop printing when the following message appears.

Warning Message	Printer Status
<16 PREP."color" TNR> ("color" indicates K, Y, M, or C)	The toner cartridge is nearing the end of its life and needs to be replaced.

If CONT.PRINTING is specified, the printer continues printing, displaying the above message. If STOP PRINTING is specified, the printer stops printing. Then, the printer resumes printing after you release the printer from the Warning status according to the displayed message.



- If <16 CHG. "color" TNR> appears, and the printer stops printing, replace the toner cartridge, and then print again.
- If STOP PRINTING is specified for this item, the message <16 PREP."color" TNR> changes to <16 CHG."color" TNR>, and the printer stops printing.

#### AUTO FRROR SKIP

#### OFF\*, ON

Specifies whether the printer should automatically use the function that, when an error has occurred, releases the printer from the error temporarily (Error Skip) and continues the job.

If OFF is specified, you need to skip the error by pressing [Online].

If is ON is specified, the printer skips the error automatically without you pressing [Online].



#### ∅ NOTE

- The Error Skip function is only for skipping an error temporarily. Therefore, the data may not be printed properly.
- For the types of error from which the printer can be released temporarily, see "Message List," on p. 8-33.
- If ON is specified for this item, the printer automatically skips all the errors it can skip automatically even when multiple errors are occurring.

### PANEL LANGUAGE

#### ENGLISH\*, FRENCH, GERMAN, ITALIAN, SPANISH

Confirm the language that is displayed in the display.

#### SHOW WARNINGS

CHECK TONERON*	, OFF
CASSETTE EMPTYON*	, OFF

A Warning status is a status in which the printer requires some remedy although the job is not affected. When the printer is in this status, a message appears in the display, or an indicator blinks.

This item allows you to specify whether a message should appear or any indicator should blink when the printer is in any of the following Warning status.

Setting	Status	Message/Indicator Blink
CHECK TONER	When a toner cartridge needs to be replaced soon	<16 PREP."color" TNR> ("color" indicates K, Y, M, or C)
CASSETTE EMPTY	When the paper cassette has run out of paper	The Paper Source indicator for the paper source that has run out of paper blinks.



The printer prints when either ON or OFF is specified.

#### DATE AND TIME

#### ■ DATE SETTING

#### 01/01/2001 to 12/31/2089

This printer has a clock function. This clock is used for the printer maintenance and job history management. Specify date in this item when the clock is not keeping correct date.



- · Date is set before shipment.
- Enter date using the following keys on the control panel.
- Increases/decreases number ...... [ ▲ ] [ ▼ ]
- Moves digits ...... [ ◀ ] [ ▶ ]
- Determines the entered date ...... [OK]
- If you do not change the date, press [Online].

#### ■ TIME SETTING

#### 00:00:00 to 23:59:59

This printer has a clock function. This clock is used for the printer maintenance and job history management. Specify time in this item when the clock is not keeping correct time.



#### NOTE

- Time is set before shipment.
- The clock in the printer should be accurate within ± 60 seconds per month. Adjust the clock periodically in this item.
- Enter time using the following keys on the control panel.
  - Increases/decreases number ...... [ ▲ ] [ ▼ ]
- Moves digits ...... [◀][▶]
- Determines the entered time ....... [OK]
- If you do not change the time, press [Online].

#### ■ DAYLIGHT SAVING

DST SETTINGS	OFF*, ON
START DATE	<month>, <week>, <day>, <time setting=""></time></day></week></month>
END DATE	<month>, <week>, <day>, <time setting=""></time></day></week></month>

Specifies whether to set the daylight saving time in DST SETTINGS and its time duration in START DATE and END DATE.



In some countries and regions, time is advanced throughout the summer season. The period in which this is applied is called "Daylight Saving Time".

#### ■ TIME ZONE

#### GMT-12:00 to GMT+12:00

Specifies the time zone according to the region where the printer is being used.



#### ∧ NOTE

The standard time zones of the world are expressed globally in terms of the difference in hours (± up to 12 hours) from GMT (± 0 hours). A time zone is a region throughout which this time difference is the same. An area which shares the same-time zone difference is called a time zone.

\* The time at the Greenwich Observatory in England is called GMT (Greenwich Mean Time).

### TIMER SETTINGS

#### ■ WAKE UP TIMER

#### OFF\*, ON

Specifies whether the printer should use the Wake Up function that releases Power Save Mode (the Panel Off mode and the Printer Power Save mode).

If ON is specified, Power Save Mode (the Panel Off mode and the Printer Power Save mode) is released when the time specified in WAKE UP TIME (See the next item) has elapsed.

If OFF is specified, the printer does not use the Wake Up function.



#### NOTE

The Wake Up function is for releasing the printer from Power Save Mode (the Panel Off mode and the Printer Power Save mode). When the printer is OFF, the Wake Up function does not function.

#### ■ WAKE UP TIME

#### 00:00 to 23:59

If WAKE UP TIMER (See the previous item) is set to ON, Power Save Mode (the Panel Off mode and the Printer Power Save mode) is released when the time specified in this item has elapsed.

This item is convenient if you want to release the printer from Power Save Mode (the Panel Off mode and the Printer Power Save mode) on the same time everyday.

#### ■ POW. SAVE TIMER

#### OFF\*, ON

Specifies whether the printer should enter Power Save Mode 1 (the Panel Off mode) when the time specified in POWER SAVE TIME (See the next item) has elapsed.

If ON is specified, the printer enters Power Save Mode 1 (the Panel Off mode) when the time specified in POWER SAVE TIME has elapsed.

If OFF is specified, the printer does not enter Power Save Mode 1 (the Panel Off mode) even when the time specified in POWER SAVE TIME has elapsed.

While the printer is in Power Save Mode 1 (the Panel Off mode), the display on the control panel is off, and the following indicators are on.

Printer Status	Indicator that Comes On
When the printer is online	Ready Indicator
When the printer is offline	Message Indicator



#### ∧ NOTE

- The Job indicator is on while a job is being stored into a box even if the printer is in Power Save Mode (The printer can store jobs into the boxes only when a hard disk is installed in the printer).
- As well as Power Save Mode 1 (the Panel Off mode), this printer has Power Save Mode 2 (the Printer Power Save mode). For details on Power Save Mode, see "Power Saving (Power Save Mode)," on p. 3-2.
- The printer does not enter Power Save Mode 1 (the Panel Off mode) during printing even when the time specified in POWER SAVE TIME has elapsed.
- You can specify whether the printer should enter Power Save Mode when an error is occurring in the printer (when the Message indicator is on, or the number in the message blinks). (See "PWR SAVE IN ERR," on p. 6-14)

#### ■ POWER SAVE TIME

00:00 to 23:59

If POW. SAVE TIMER (See the previous item) is set to ON, the printer enters Power Save Mode 1 (the Panel Off mode) when the time specified in this item has elapsed.

This item is convenient if you want to set the printer to Power Save Mode 1 (the Panel Off mode) on the same time everyday.

#### ■ CALIBRATE TIMER

OFF\*, ON

Specifies whether the calibration of the printer should be started when the time specified in CALIBRATE TIME (See the next item) has elapsed.

If ON is specified, calibration of the printer is started when the time specified in CALIBRATE TIME has elapsed.

If OFF is specified, calibration of the printer is not started even when the time specified in CALIBRATE TIME has elapsed.

Calibration adjusts a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" and controls the print density (adjusts color hues).



#### ∧ NOTE

Calibration is not performed if the printer is receiving print data at the time specified in CALIBRATE TIME.

#### ■ CALIBRATE TIME

00:00 to 23:59

If CALIBRATE TIMER (See the previous item) is set to ON, calibration of the printer is started when the time specified in this item has elapsed.

This item is convenient if you want to calibrate the printer on the same time everyday.

#### HARD DISK

#### ON\*, OFF

Specifies whether to use the following functions that require a hard disk.

- Interrupt print
- · Changing the order of print data
- Changing the attributions of print data (print copies, etc.)
- Pausing/Resuming print data processing

- Saving print data on the hard disk (boxes) (data can be printed again) (See p. 6-67)
- Secured print (See p. 6-66)
- Encrypted secured print (See p. 6-65)
- RIP Once (See p. 6-21)
- Spooler (See p. 6-49)
- SMB printing (See p. 6-48)
- Using SSL for communication by the Remote UI (See p. 6-49)

Usually, leave the setting to ON. Specify OFF only when an error has occurred in a function that uses the hard disk.



#### IMPORTANT

- Initialize the SETUP menu after installing the optional hard disk, and then cycle the power of the printer or perform a hard reset. After initializing the SETUP menu, the functions of the hard disk become effective by cycling the power of the printer or performing a hard reset.
- After changing the settings for this item, cycle the power of the printer or perform a hard reset to make the settings effective.



#### ∧ NOTE

This item is displayed only when an optional hard disk is installed.

#### INTERRUPT PRINT

#### ON\*, OFF

Specifies whether to use the interrupt print function.



### ∧ NOTE

This item is displayed only when an optional hard disk is installed, and HARD DISK is set to ON. When HARD DISK is set to OFF, the setting for this item is ignored, and the interrupt print is disabled.

#### SECURING TIME

1 hour\*, 2 hours, 3 hours, 6 hours, 12 hours, 24 hours

On the computer, previously specify the time to delete data of "secured print" in which the file name, user name, and password are specified.

Secured print data is saved on the hard disk, and normally, the data cannot be deleted unless it is printed. However, the data is automatically deleted even if it has not been printed when the time specified in this item has elapsed.



#### NOTE

 As well as secured print data, encrypted secured print data is also deleted when the time specified in this item has elapsed.

- Print secured print data using SECURED PRINT (See p. 6-66) in the UTILITY menu or the Remote UI.
- Secured print data is deleted by turning the printer OFF or performing a hard reset or soft reset even if the time specified in this item has not elapsed yet.
- Specify the file name, user name, and password in the printer driver.
- This item is displayed only when an optional hard disk is installed, and HARD DISK is set to ON. When HARD DISK is set to OFF, the setting for this item is ignored, and the secured print jobs cannot be deleted.

#### SECURED TYPE

#### IMAGE\*, PDL

Specifies the format to be used for when secured print data is saved in this printer.

If IMAGE is specified, the data sent from the computer is saved on the hard disk with the image opened.

If PDL is specified, the data sent from the computer is saved on the hard disk as it is.



#### ∅ NOTE

- If IMAGE is specified, the process time after the password is entered for printing becomes shorter than when PDL is specified. However, you cannot interrupt the job that has already started to be printed or stop the operation.
- Encrypted secured print data is saved in PDL regardless of the setting for this item.
- This item is displayed only when an optional hard disk is installed, and HARD DISK is set to ON.

#### **RIP ONCE**

#### ON\*, OFF

Specifies whether to use the function of "RIP Once" when an optional hard disk is installed. RIP Once is a function that saves the data of the first copy on the hard disk and prints the second and subsequent copies at a high speed when you print multiple copies.

This function is effective for printing a large amount of copies or multiple copies of complicated data, such as the one that contains many diagrams or images.



#### IMPORTANT

After changing the settings for this item, cycle the power of the printer or perform a hard reset to make the settings effective.



#### ∅ NOTE

• This function may have little effect on printing relatively simple data such as the one that contains only text or small amount of copies.

 This item is displayed only when an optional hard disk is installed, and HARD DISK is set to ON. When HARD DISK is set to OFF, the setting for this item is ignored, and the function of "RIP Once" cannot be used.

#### **ASSURE JOB LOG**

#### OFF\*, ON

If you turn the printer OFF during printing, the print log of the job being printed may not be saved, or the total number of printed pages (page counter) may not be counted.

If ON is specified for this item, the print log of the job being printed is saved, and the total number of printed pages (page counter) is counted even when you turn the printer OFF.



#### MPORTANT

If ON is specified, the printing speed drops.



#### ∧ NOTE

This item is displayed only when an optional hard disk is installed, and HARD DISK is set to ON. When HARD DISK is set to OFF, the setting for this item is ignored. and the function of Assure Job Log cannot be used.

# FEEDER MENU Options

#### TRAY PAPER SIZE

LTR\*, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZE R, ENV. ISO-C5, ENV. COM10, ENV. MONARCH, ENV. DL, ENV. ISO-B5, INDEX CARD, STMT, FLSC, 16K, A5, B5, A4

Specifies the size of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray.

# IMPORTANT

- When you change the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray frequently, it is convenient if TRAY PAPER SIZE in the control panel is set to MIXED SIZES. If TRAY PAPER SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES, you do not need to specify the setting for TRAY PAPER SIZE each time you load the different size paper. However, when specifying MIXED SIZES, make sure that the size of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray matches the paper size specified in the printer driver before printing. If they do not match, the printer may stop printing, displaying the message <41 CHK PAPER SZE>, or a paper jam may occur. Be sure to check if the paper size specified in the printer driver matches the size of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray before using the printer. However, if SPECIAL MODE J (See p. 6-52) is set to ON, the printer prints without checking the paper size even when the paper size specified in the printer driver and the size of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray do not match.
- When printing custom size paper from UFR II Printer Driver, you can load the paper either in portrait or landscape orientation. However, if you want to print custom size paper of its long edges 8.50 in. (215.9 mm) or less when TRAY PAPER SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES, load the paper in landscape orientation. When you are not printing from UFR II Printer Driver, load the paper in portrait orientation.



- Select CUSTOM SIZE or CUSTOM SIZE R when you want to specify custom size
  paper using application and print it. If a message that prompts you to change the
  size of the paper appears during printing, press [Online] to clear the error before
  printing again.
- You cannot print on any area within 0.39 in. (10 mm) of the edges of an envelope. (If you have selected the [Print with Upper Left of Sheet as Starting Point] check box in [Finishing Details] in the UFR II printer driver, you can extend the printable area to near the edges of the paper. Depending on the print data to be printed, however, the edge of paper may be missing partly during printing or may blot during color printing. For more details, see Help of the UFR II printer driver.)
- You can specify the same setting in TRAY PAPER SIZE in the SELECT FEEDER menu.

### CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2)

LTR\*, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZE R, FLSC, 16K, A5, B5, A4

Specifies the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassettes (Cassette 1 and 2).

# **IMPORTANT**

- When you change the paper loaded in the paper cassette frequently, it is convenient if you set CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) to MIXED SIZES. When CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) is set to MIXED SIZES, you do not need to specify the setting for CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) each time you load different size paper. However, when specifying MIXED SIZES, make sure that the size of the loaded paper matches the paper size specified in the printer driver before printing. If they do not match, the printer may stop printing, displaying the message <41 CHK PAPER SZE>, or a paper jam may occur. Be sure to check if the paper size specified in the printer driver matches the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassette before using the printer. However, if SPECIAL MODE J (See p. 6-52) is set to ON, the printer prints without checking the paper size even when the paper size specified in the printer driver and the size of the paper loaded in the cassette do not match.
- When printing custom size paper from UFR II Printer Driver, you can load the paper either in portrait or landscape orientation. However, if you want to print custom size paper of its long edges 8.50 in. (215.9 mm) or less when CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) is set to MIXED SIZES, load the paper in landscape orientation. When you are not printing from UFR II Printer Driver, load the paper in portrait orientation.



- Select CUSTOM SIZE or CUSTOM SIZE R when you want to specify custom size paper using application and print it. If a message that prompts you to change the size of the paper appears during printing, press [Online] to clear the error before printing again.
- You can specify the same setting in CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) in the SELECT FEEDER menu.
- CASSETTE2 SIZE is displayed only when the optional paper feeder is installed.

#### STD PAPER SIZE

LTR\*, LGL, EXEC, ENV. ISO-C5, ENV. COM10, ENV. MONARCH, ENV. DL, ENV. ISO-B5, INDEX CARD, STMT, FLSC, 16K, A5, B5, A4

Specifies a standard paper size for when the printer cannot determine the size of the paper to process, such as when using paper that you cannot specify its size in an application.



#### (III) IMPORTANT

When printing from Windows or Macintosh, specify the paper size in the printer driver. When you want to print from a computer in which an operating system such as MS-DOS and UNIX is used and cannot specify the paper size, specify the size in this item.

#### OFF\*, ON

Specifies whether the printer should detect the paper source in order starting with the multi-purpose tray when AUTO is specified in the SELECT FEEDER menu.

If OFF is specified, the printer detects if the size of the paper in a paper source matches the paper size of the received data in the following order.

Cassette 1 → Cassette 2 \*1 → Multi-purpose Tray

If ON is specified, the printer detects if the size of the paper in a paper source matches the paper size of the received data in the following order starting with the multi-purpose tray.

Multi-purpose Tray → Cassette 1 → Cassette 2 \*1

\*1: Only when the optional paper feeders are installed



#### ∅ NOTE

- If INVLDPAPER TRAY (See the next item) is set to ON, the setting for this item is ignored, and the printer detects the paper source starting with the paper cassette. When paper that is the same size as the paper size of the received data is not loaded in the selected paper source, the printer feeds paper from the multi-purpose tray.
- Specify the setting for automatic paper selection in PAPER SOURCE (See p. 6-71) in the SELECT FEEDER menu.
- This item is effective only when PAPER SOURCE in the SELECT FEEDER menu is set to AUTO.
- Even if ON is specified for this item, the printer does not feed paper from the multi-purpose tray when the size of the paper in the multi-purpose tray is different from the paper size of the received data. However, if INVLDPAPER TRAY (See the next item) is set to ON, a message that prompts you to replace the paper in the multi-purpose tray appears when the paper that is the same size as the paper size of the received data is not loaded in the selected paper source.
- Even if ON is specified for this item, depending on the received data, paper may be fed not from the multi-purpose tray but from the paper cassette when the Paper Source indicator for the paper cassette for the paper size of the received data is on.

#### OFF\*, ON

Specifies what the printer does when paper that is the same size as the paper size of the received data is not loaded in the selected paper source.

If OFF is specified, a message that prompts you to replace the paper in the paper cassette appears, and the printer stops printing.

If ON is specified, the printer feeds paper from the multi-purpose tray. If the size of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray is different from the paper size of the received data, a message that prompts you to replace the paper in the multi-purpose tray appears, and the printer stops printing. When no paper is loaded in the multi-purpose tray, or the multi-purpose tray runs out of paper, a message that informs you of the tray's paper-out condition appears, and the printer stops printing.



### ∧ NOTE

If ON is specified for this item, the settings for TRAY in AUTO SELECTION (See the next item) and TRAY PRIORITY (See the previous item) are ignored, and the printer feeds paper from the multi-purpose tray when paper that is the same size as the paper size of the received data is not loaded in the selected paper source.

#### **AUTO SELECTION**

TRAY	. ON*, OFF
CASSETTE 1	. ON*, OFF
CASSETTE 2*1	ON*. OFF

<sup>\*1</sup> CASSETTE2 is displayed only when the optional paper feeder is installed.

Specifies the paper source to be automatically selected when the automatic paper selection is specified in the SELECT FEEDER menu. Specify the setting for the multi-purpose tray and paper cassettes individually.

If ON is specified, the printer selects the respective paper source as the paper source to be automatically selected. If OFF is specified, the printer does not select the respective paper source as the paper source to be automatically selected.



#### ∧ NOTE

- If INVLDPAPER TRAY (See the previous item) is set to ON, the setting for TRAY in this item is ignored, and the printer feeds paper from the multi-purpose tray when paper that is the same size as the paper size of the received data is not loaded in the selected paper source.
- Specify the setting for automatic paper selection in PAPER SOURCE (See p. 6-71) in the SELECT FEEDER menu.

### STD PAPER TYPE

PLAIN PAPER\*, PLAIN PAPER H, HEAVY PAPER 1, HEAVY PAPER 2, HEAVY PAPER 3, TRANSPARENCIES, ENVELOPE, COATED PAPER, LABEL, ROUGH **PAPER** 

Specifies the default paper type. This printer internally applies the optimum print mode for the paper type specified in this item.

Each print mode supports the following paper types.

• PLAIN PAPER: Plain Paper (16.0 - 27.9 lb Bond (60 - 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>))

 PLAIN PAPER H: Specify when you want to give a gloss to plain paper (19.9)

27.9 lb Bond (75 - 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>)) to be printed.

Heavy Paper (28.0 lb Bond - 44.4 lb Cover (106 - 120 g/ • HEAVY PAPER 1:

 $m^2$ ))

 HEAVY PAPER 2: Heavy Paper (44.5 - 65.1 lb Cover (121 - 176 g/m<sup>2</sup>))

 HEAVY PAPER 3: It is not recommended to print on heavy paper that weighs

> between 65.2 and 81.4 lb Cover (177 and 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>). However, specify if you have to perform printing.

TRANSPARENCIES: Transparencies (Black and white printing only)

 FNVFLOPF: Envelopes

 COATED PAPER: Coated Paper (27.9 lb Bond - 44.4 lb Cover (105 - 120 g/

 $m^2$ ))

LABEL: Labels

 ROUGH PAPER: Specify when a paper jam occurs or when you want to

> improve the fixation on printing coarse paper (19.9 - 27.9 lb Bond (75 - 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>)) with PLAIN PAPER selected.



- When printing from Windows or Macintosh, specify the paper type in the printer driver. When you want to print from a computer in which an operating system such as MS-DOS and UNIX is used and cannot specify the paper type, specify the paper type in this item.
- When printing coated paper of 44.5 59.2 lb Cover (121 160 g/m<sup>2</sup>), set STD PAPER TYPE to COATED PAPER, and then set COATED PAPER in SP.PRINT MODE in the USER MAIN. options to ON.

#### TRAY PAPER TYPE

PLAIN PAPER\*, PLAIN PAPER H, HEAVY PAPER 1, HEAVY PAPER 2, HEAVY PAPER 3, TRANSPARENCIES, ENVELOPE, COATED PAPER, LABEL, ROUGH PAPER. MIXED TYPES

Specifies the type of the paper to be loaded in the multi-purpose tray. This printer internally applies the optimum print mode for the paper type specified in this item.

Each print mode supports the following paper types.

 PLAIN PAPER: Plain Paper (16.0 - 27.9 lb Bond (60 - 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>))

 PLAIN PAPER H: Specify when you want to give a gloss to plain paper (19.9)

- 27.9 lb Bond (75 - 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>)) to be printed.

Heavy Paper (28.0 lb Bond - 44.4 lb Cover (106 - 120 g/ HEAVY PAPER 1:

 $m^2$ ))

 HEAVY PAPER 2: Heavy Paper (44.5 - 65.1 lb Cover (121 - 176 g/m<sup>2</sup>))

It is not recommended to print on heavy paper that weighs HEAVY PAPER 3:

> between 65.2 and 81.4 lb Cover (177 and 220 g/m<sup>2</sup>). However, specify if you have to perform printing.

TRANSPARENCIES: Transparencies (Black and white printing only)

Envelopes FNVFLOPF:

 COATED PAPER: Coated Paper (27.9 lb Bond - 44.4 lb Cover (105 - 120 g/

 $m^2$ ))

LABEL: Labels

 ROUGH PAPER: Specify when a paper jam occurs or when you want to

> improve the fixation on printing coarse paper (19.9 - 27.9 lb Bond (75 - 105 a/m<sup>2</sup>)) with PLAIN PAPER selected.

# IMPORTANT

 This printer applies the optimum print mode for the interior of the printer according to the type of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray. If the type of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray and the setting for the print mode do not match. this may result in crucial damage to the engine.

When printing from Windows or Macintosh using the multi-purpose tray, be sure to match the type of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray, the setting for TRAY PAPER TYPE, and the setting for [Paper Type] in the printer driver. If they do not match, the printer stops printing, displaying an error message.

When printing from DOS, UNIX, or other operating system on which the printer driver cannot be used, be sure to match the type of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray, the setting for TRAY PAPER TYPE, and the setting for STD PAPER TYPE.

- If MIXED TYPES is specified, the printer does not check the type of the loaded paper against the paper type specified in the printer driver. Make sure that the paper type specified in the printer driver matches the type of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray before using the printer.
- When printing coated paper of 44.5 59.2 lb Cover (121 160 g/m²), set TRAY PAPER TYPE to COATED PAPER, and then set COATED PAPER in SP.PRINT MODE in the USER MAIN. options to ON.



### ∧ NOTE

You can specify the same setting in TRAY PAPER TYPE in the SELECT FEEDER menu.

#### PLAIN PAPER\*, PLAIN PAPER H, ROUGH PAPER, MIXED TYPES

Specifies the type of the paper to be loaded in the paper cassettes (Cassette 1 and 2). This printer internally applies the optimum print mode for the paper type specified in this item.

Each print mode supports the following paper types.

- Plain Paper (16.0 27.9 lb Bond (60 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>)) PLAIN PAPER:
- PLAIN PAPER H: Specify when you want to give a gloss to plain paper (19.9 -27.9 lb Bond (75 - 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>)) to be printed.
- ROUGH PAPER: Specify when a paper jam occurs or when you want to improve the fixation on printing coarse paper (19.9 - 27.9 lb Bond (75 - 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>)) with PLAIN PAPER selected.



#### **IMPORTANT**

- This printer applies the optimum print mode for the interior of the printer according to the type of the paper loaded in the paper cassette. If the type of the paper loaded in the paper cassette and the setting for the print mode do not match, this may result in crucial damage to the engine.
  - When printing from Windows or Macintosh using the paper cassette, be sure to match the type of the paper loaded in the paper cassette, the setting for CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2), and the setting for [Paper Type] in the printer driver. If they do not match, the printer stops printing, displaying an error message. When printing from DOS, UNIX, or other operating system on which the printer driver cannot be used, be sure to match the type of the paper loaded in the paper cassette, the setting for CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2), and the setting for STD PAPER TYPE.
- If MIXED TYPES is specified, the printer does not check the type of the loaded paper against the paper type specified in the printer driver. Make sure that the paper type specified in the printer driver matches the type of the paper loaded in the paper cassette before using the printer.



#### ∅ NOTE

- You can specify the same setting in CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2) in the SELECT FEEDER menu.
- CASSETTE2 TYPE is displayed only when the optional paper feeder is installed.

### 1ST SIDE\*, 2ND SIDE

Specifies the printing side of the plain paper or heavy paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray when performing 2-sided printing.

When printing the front side (the side you print first) of the paper, specify 1ST SIDE.

When printing the reverse side of previously printed paper, specify 2ND SIDE.



#### (IMPORTANT

Be sure to specify 2ND SIDE before printing the other side of previously printed paper with this printer.

#### 2-SIDED PRINT.

#### OFF\*, ON

Specifies whether the printer should print on one side or both sides of the paper. If ON is specified, the printer prints on both sides of the paper.



#### **IMPORTANT**

When printing from Windows or Macintosh, specify 2-sided printing in the printer driver. When you want to print from a computer in which an operating system such as MS-DOS and UNIX is used and cannot specify 2-sided printing, specify the setting in this item.



#### ∧ NOTE

- Automatic 2-sided printing can be performed only on plain paper (16.0 to 27.9 lb Bond (60 to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup>)), heavy paper (28.0 lb Bond to 44.4 lb Cover (106 to 120 g/ m<sup>2</sup>)), and coated paper (27.9 lb Bond to 44.4 lb Cover (105 to 120 g/m<sup>2</sup>)) at a size of A4. Legal, Letter, or Foolscap, For more details, see "Usable Paper," on p. 4-2.
- When performing automatic 2-sided printing on paper with a logo, load the paper as the following.
- When printing from the paper cassette, load the paper with the printing side of the first page facing down.
- When printing from the multi-purpose tray, load the paper with the printing side of the first page facing up.
- You can specify the same setting in 2-SIDED PRINT, in the SELECT FEEDER menu.

# **LAYOUT MENU Options**

#### **COPIES**

1 to 9999; 1\*

Specifies the number of copies to be printed.

The printer prints the specified number of copies.

#### OFFSET Y/OFFSET X

-1.97 to 1.97; 0.00\* (in.)

Adjusts the printing position in the vertical direction (Y) or the horizontal direction (X) by the specified value.

The printing position changes as follows according to the increase and decrease of the specified value.

OFFSET Y: As the value increases, the gutter width in the Y direction

increases.

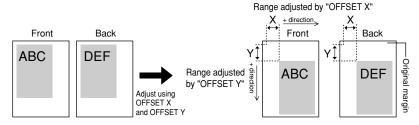
As the value decreases, the gutter width in the Y direction

decreases.

OFFSET X: As the value increases, the gutter width in the X direction

increases.

As the value decreases, the gutter width in the X direction decreases.



# (IMPORTANT

If any part of the print image lies outside the printable area after adjusting the printing position, the part will be missing in the print result.



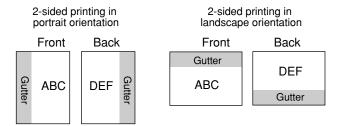
Each time you press [►], the value increases in 0.01 in. increments, and each time you press [◄], the value decreases in 0.01 in. increments. If you keep holding down [►] or [◄], the speed of the value changing is increased.

### LONG EDGE\*, SHORT EDGE

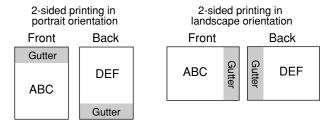
Specifies which edge of the paper, the long edge or short edge, is to be bound. When you want to bind paper on which 2-sided printing is performed, the printer adjusts the binding location automatically according to the paper surface.

Specify the binding location (top/bottom/left/right) and its width in GUTTER (See the next item).

If LONG EDGE is specified, the binding location is created on the long edge of the paper.



If SHORT EDGE is specified, the binding location is created on the short edge of the paper.

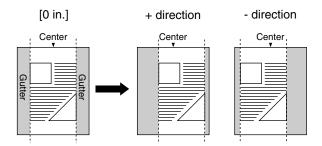




You cannot create a gutter only by specifying this item. A gutter can be created only after specifying this item in combination with the setting for GUTTER.

### -1.97 to 1.97; 0.00\* (in.)

Specifies the gutter width for printing with the binding location created. A gutter is created with the image shifted by the specified value. You can shift the image in the "+" direction with a positive value and in the "-" direction with a negative value.



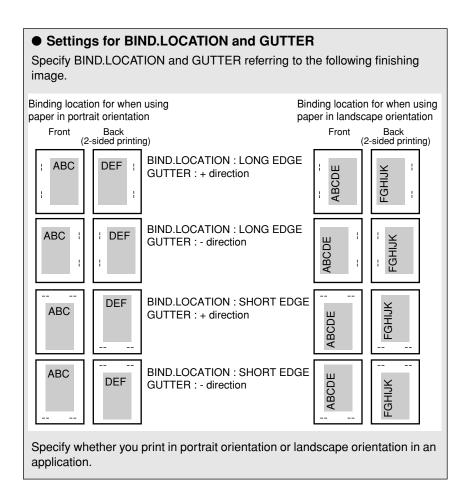
Specify on which edge of the paper, the long edge or short edge, the gutter is to be created in BIND.LOCATION (See the previous item). On which edge (top/ bottom/left/right) of the paper the gutter is created depends on the setting for BIND.LOCATION and which value "+" or "-" is specified for this item.

#### IMPORTANT

If any part of the print image lies outside the printable area after creating a gutter, the part will be missing in the print result.



- Each time you press [►], the value increases in 0.01 in. increments, and each time you press [ ◀], the value decreases in 0.01 in. increments. If you keep holding down [►] or [◄], the speed of the value changing is increased.
- If the settings for OFFSET Y and OFFSET X are specified at the same time as the setting for this item is specified, the settings for OFFSETY and OFFSET X are processed first, and then the setting for this item is processed.



# **ALT.METHOD**

### ON\*, OFF

Specifies the printing side of the last page on a job with odd number of pages when 2-SIDED PRINT. (See p. 6-30) is set to ON.

The printing side of the last page varies depending on the setting for this item or paper source as the following.

- When printing from the paper cassette
   If ON is specified, the printer prints on the upper side of the loaded paper.
   If OFF is specified, the printer prints on the underside of the loaded paper.
- When printing from the multi-purpose tray
   If ON is specified, the printer prints on the underside of the loaded paper.
   If OFF is specified, the printer prints on the upper side of the loaded paper.

Specify OFF for this item when you want to match the setting of the orientation or printing side for the last page with those for its previous page, such as when you want to print previously printed paper etc. whose printing orientation or printing side is fixed.



The setting is effective only when 2-SIDED PRINT. is set to ON.

# **QUALITY MENU Options**

#### GRADATION LEVEL

HIGH 1\*, HIGH 2

Specifies the gradation level for printing data.

Specify HIGH 1 when printing pictures or other data in general quality and specify HIGH 2 when printing in higher quality.

# About memory amount required for using the HIGH 2 mode

Printing in the HIGH 2 mode requires a large amount of memory for data process. Therefore, when the HIGH 2 mode is specified, the message <39 SPL MEM.FULL> may appear depending on the amount or type of data, disabling printing. In this case, print with GRADATION LEVEL set to HIGH 1, or install an optional expansion RAM module as needed. For details on the optional expansion RAM modules, see "Expansion RAM," on p. 1-14.

# **TONER SAVE**

OFF\*, ON

Specifies whether to use the toner save mode that is suitable for when printing a proof sheet.



If ON is specified for this item, print result may be faint and unclear. Parts to which gradation is applied in very light gray may appear denser in color.

- When printing without using the toner save mode
- When printing using the toner save mode



# **DENSITY: CYAN**

#### 1 to 16; 8\*

Adjusts the print density of cyan for the print data. As the value increases, the print density becomes denser.



# **⊘** NOTE

- Normally, you do not need to adjust the print density with this item.
- When this printer is connected to a network on which two or more printers are being used at the same time, make a fine adjustment on the gap of the print density among the printers.

# **DENSITY: MAGENTA**

#### 1 to 16:8\*

Adjusts the print density of magenta for the print data. As the value increases, the print density becomes denser.



- Normally, you do not need to adjust the print density with this item.
- When this printer is connected to a network on which two or more printers are being used at the same time, make a fine adjustment on the gap of the print density among the printers.

# **DENSITY: YELLOW**

#### 1 to 16; 8\*

Adjusts the print density of yellow for the print data. As the value increases, the print density becomes denser.



#### ∧ NOTE

- Normally, you do not need to adjust the print density with this item.
- When this printer is connected to a network on which two or more printers are being used at the same time, make a fine adjustment on the gap of the print density among the printers.

# DENSITY: BLACK

#### 1 to 16:8\*

Adjusts the print density of black for the print data. As the value increases, the print density becomes denser.



# ∅ NOTE

- Normally, you do not need to adjust the print density with this item.
- When this printer is connected to a network on which two or more printers are being used at the same time, make a fine adjustment on the gap of the print density among the printers.

# **COLOR MODE**

#### AUTO\*, COLOR, BLACK & WHITE

Specifies whether to print in color or in black and white.

If AUTO is specified, the printer automatically switches between color printing and black-and-white printing according to the document type.

If COLOR is specified, the printer prints using the four colors of KYMC (Black. Yellow, Magenta, and Cyan).

If BLACK & WHITE is specified, the printer prints in black and white even when printing a color document.

# **HALFTONES**

#### ■ B & W HALFTONES

TEXT.....HIGH RESOL.\*, RESOLUTION, GRADATION, COLOR TONE GRAPHICS .... GRADATION\*, COLOR TONE, HIGH RESOL., RESOLUTION IMAGE.....GRADATION\*, COLOR TONE, HIGH RESOL., RESOLUTION

Specifies the display pattern of subtle gradation (medium gradation) for black-and-white data for each text part, graphics part such as diagrams and graphs, and image part such as picture images.

RESOLUTION prints precisely so that the lines of text data appear clearly. This setting is appropriate for printing data that contains text or thin lines.

GRADATION prints with a smooth gradation and fine outline quality combined. This setting is appropriate for printing diagrams or graphs in which gradation is used.

COLOR TONE prints with a stable texture and distinct gradation, by enhancing the contrast of tone. This setting is appropriate for printing image data such as photographic images.

Although HIGH RESOL. prints in higher resolution than RESOLUTION does, the stability of the texture is lower in quality. This setting is appropriate for printing a document so that the outlines of text, thin lines, or CAD appear clearly.

# ■ COLOR HALFTONES

TEXT......HIGH RESOL.\*, RESOLUTION, GRADATION, COLOR TONE GRAPHICS.... GRADATION\*, COLOR TONE, HIGH RESOL., RESOLUTION IMAGE .............. GRADATION\*, COLOR TONE, HIGH RESOL., RESOLUTION

Specifies the display pattern of subtle gradation (medium gradation) for color data for each text part, graphics part such as diagrams and graphs, and image part such as picture images.

RESOLUTION prints precisely so that the lines of text data appear clearly. This setting is appropriate for printing data that contains text or thin lines.

GRADATION prints with a stable texture and color hue, and a smooth gradation combined. This setting is appropriate for printing image data such as photographic images, because it reduces a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors".

Although COLOR TONE prints precisely with the phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" reduced than GRADATION does, the stability of the texture is lower in quality. This setting is appropriate for printing diagrams, graphs, etc.

Although HIGH RESOL. prints in higher resolution than RESOLUTION does, the stability of the texture is lower in quality. This setting is appropriate for printing a document so that the outlines of text, thin lines, or CAD appear clearly.

# **GRAY COMPENSATE**

TEXT	.ON*, OFF
GRAPHICS	.ON*, OFF
IMAGE	.ON*, OFF

Specifies whether to print gray color data with the black toner (Bk) only.

If ON is specified, the printer prints gray color data with the black toner (Bk) only. You can prevent a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors".

If OFF is specified, the printer prints the gray color of gray color data using the four colors of CMYK. The ability to reproduce the tone of the dark parts is more improved than when ON is specified.

# **■ CMS SELECTION**

# PRINTER\*, HOST

Specifies which device the printer or host (the printer driver) is to be used for color processing.

If PRINTER is specified, the color processing is performed on the printer.

If HOST is specified, the color processing is not performed on the printer.

# IMPORTANT

- If the setting for CMS (Matching) on the host (the printer driver) is set to [Driver Matching Mode], the setting for this item is ignored even if PRINTER is specified, the host performs the color correction process.
- If HOST is specified for this item, the host that is not connected via the printer driver does not perform the color correction process.

# ■ CMS/GAMMA

TEXT	. CMS*, GAMMA
GRAPHICS	. CMS*, GAMMA
IMAGE	. CMS*, GAMMA

Specifies whether to perform color matching or correct color specifying the gamma value.

You can specify the settings by data type of TEXT, GRAPHICS, and IMAGE.

If you change the setting for this item, availabilities of the following settings switch.

	CMS	GAMMA
RGB SRCE PROF. (See the next item)	0	Х
OUTPUT PROFILE (See p. 6-42)	0	Х
MATCHING METHOD (See p. 6-42)	0	Х
GAMMA (See p. 6-43)	Х	0

: Enabled X: Disabled

# ■ RGB SRCE PROF.

TEXT	sRGB_v1.31*, HDTV_gamma_1.5,
	HDTV_gamma_1.8, HDTV_gamma_2.4, Download
	Profile*1
GRAPHICS	sRGB_v1.31*, HDTV_gamma_1.5,
	HDTV_gamma_1.8, HDTV_gamma_2.4, Download
	Profile*1
IMAGE	sRGB_v1.31*, HDTV_gamma_1.5,
	HDTV_gamma_1.8, HDTV_gamma_2.4, Download
	Profile*1

<sup>\*1 &</sup>quot;Download Profile" appears only when a profile is downloaded.

Selects the profile appropriate for RGB data according to the monitor you are using.

You can specify the settings by data type of TEXT, GRAPHICS, and IMAGE.

# sRGB v1.31

Industry-standard image quality of the general Windows (PC) monitor is applied. If you are using a monitor that supports sRGB, the printer performs matching for the colors displayed on the monitor and those printed by the printer to print in colors close to those displayed on the monitor. The default value is "sRGB v1.31".

# HDTV gamma X.X: HDTV gamma 1.5, HDTV gamma 1.8, and HDTV gamma 2.4

Adjusts the brightness of the printout results without spoiling the lightest parts and darkest parts of the data. Specify the setting for this item when you want to adjust the brightness such as when the colors in the printout result are lighter than those displayed on the monitor. The greater the gamma value is, the darker in color the data is printed.

#### **Download Profile**

Specify the setting value when using a profile downloaded onto the printer.



#### ∧ NOTE

• Download profiles using NetSpot Resource Downloader. For details on the download procedure, see "NetSpot Resource Downloader User's Guide". Obtain NetSpot Resource Downloader and "NetSpot Resource Downloader User's Guide" from the Canon website.

• The settings in the control panel and those in the printer driver correspond to each other as follows.

Printer Driver Setting	Control Panel Setting
sRGB v1.31(Canon)	sRGB_v1.31
Canon HDTV gamma 1.5 Monitor	HDTV_gamma_1.5
Canon HDTV gamma 1.8 Monitor	HDTV_gamma_1.8
Canon HDTV gamma 2.4 Monitor	HDTV_gamma_2.4

• Set CMS/GAMMA (See p. 6-40) to CMS to enable this item.

#### ■ OUTPUT PROFILE

TEXT	Normal*, Photo
GRAPHICS	Normal*, Photo
IMAGE	Photo*, Normal

Specify the output profile. The output profile is applied to all the print data.

You can specify the settings by data type of TEXT, GRAPHICS, and IMAGE.

Normally, leave the settings for text data and graphics data to Normal, and image data to Photo.



### ∧ NOTE

Set CMS/GAMMA (See p. 6-40) to CMS to enable this item.

# ■ MATCHING METHOD

TEXT	. SATURATION*, COLORIMETRIC, PERCEPTUAL
GRAPHICS	. PERCEPTUAL*, SATURATION, COLORIMETRIC
IMAGE	. PERCEPTUAL*, SATURATION, COLORIMETRIC

Performs color adjustment because the colors displayed on the monitor of the computer are different from those reproduced by the printer. Select the adjustment method from among the followings according to your use or preference.

You can specify the settings by data type of TEXT, GRAPHICS, and IMAGE.

If PERCEPTUAL is specified, the printer performs matching giving priority to color hue.

If SATURATION is specified, the printer performs matching giving priority to color intensity.

If COLORIMETRIC is specified, the printer performs matching so that the difference in color of a logo, etc. between the original print data on screen and the printed paper is minimized.



 The settings in the control panel and those in the printer driver correspond to each other as follows.

Printer Driver Setting	Control Panel Setting
Perceptual [Monitor Color Matched]	Specify PERCEPTUAL for this item, and set OUTPUT PROFILE to Normal.
Perceptual [Photographic]	Specify PERCEPTUAL for this item, and set OUTPUT PROFILE to Photo.
Saturation	Specify SATURATION for this item.
Colorimetric	Specify COLORIMETRIC for this item.
Colorimetric [No White-Point Correction]*1	Cannot be specified from the control panel.

<sup>\*1 [</sup>Colorimetric [No White-Point Correction]] can be specified only on Windows 2000 or Windows XP.

# ■ GAMMA

TEXT	1.4*, 1.8, 2.2, 1.0	
GRAPHICS	1.4*, 1.8, 2.2, 1.0	
IMAGE	1.4*, 1.8, 2.2, 1.0	

Adjusts the brightness of the printout results without spoiling the lightest parts and darkest parts of the data. Apply this option when printed colors in the printed paper are lighter than those in the original image (such as photographs that have not yet been scanned or graphics created on the monitor) or when you want to change the brightness of colors. The greater the setting value is, the darker in color the data is printed. 1.4 is the value without correction.

You can specify the settings by data type of TEXT, GRAPHICS, and IMAGE.



Set CMS/GAMMA (See p. 6-40) to GAMMA to enable this item.

<sup>•</sup> Set CMS/GAMMA (See p. 6-40) to CMS to enable this item.

# CONT.PRINTING\*, STOP PRINTING

Specifies whether the printer should continue printing with the image quality of the data being lowered automatically or stop printing displaying the following error message when the memory required for the process runs out.

Error Message	Setting
<38 LOW IMGE QLTY>	When the printer receives a large amount of data or complicated data, the memory required for the process may run out, and the printer may print with its resolution level being lowered automatically. Specify whether the printer should display an error message when the printer is in this status.

If CONT.PRINTING is specified, the printer prints with the image quality of the data being lowered automatically without displaying a message.

If STOP PRINTING is specified, the printer stops printing, displaying a message. In this case, the printer resumes printing with the image quality of the data being lowered by pressing [Online].



# ∧ NOTE

- When the message <38 LOW IMGE QLTY> appears frequently by specifying STOP PRINTING for this item, perform the following procedure.
  - 1. If GRADATION LEVEL is set to HIGH 2, set it to HIGH 1. If you do so, however, the printer prints with the gradation level of the data being lowered.
  - 2. When the message still appears after applying the Remedy 1, or when you want to print with the gradation level of the data as it is, install an optional expansion memory module (RAM).
- If STOP PRINTING is specified for this option, the printer sometimes stops printing. displaying the message <26 SYS.MEM.FULL> depending on the type of the received data when the memory required for the process runs out. In this case, you can clear the error by pressing [Online]. However, the data may not be printed properly.

# **INTERFACE MENU Options**

#### I/F CONNECTION

PARALLEL	ON*, OFF	
USB	ON*, OFF	
NETWORK		
EXT.INTERFACE*1	ON*, OFF	

<sup>\*1</sup> EXT.INTERFACE is displayed only when the optional expansion interface board is installed.

Specifies the settings for the interfaces used for communication with the computer, etc.

You can specify ON or OFF for each interface.

Even if multiple interfaces are set to ON, the printer automatically switches to the one that received the data first. Therefore, you do not need to change the setting in the printer each time you connect the printer to different types of interfaces at the same time.



#### **IMPORTANT**

After changing the settings for this item, cycle the power of the printer or perform a hard reset to make the settings effective.

# MODE TIMEOUT

OFF, 5 to 300 seconds; 15 seconds\*

Specifies the function to finish a job automatically.

If you specify the time the printer times out in this item, the printer can finish a job automatically when the specified time has elapsed since no data is entered.

If this item is specified, the printer can output paper automatically when data is remaining in the printer because of an application not sending the command to output paper.

When OFF is specified, the printer does not use the function to finish a job automatically.



#### **IMPORTANT**

- If the function to finish a job automatically is specified, the job may be finished in the middle of the process when the computer takes a long time to process the data.
   In this case, adjust the time the printer times out.
- When you are using an optional hard disk, specify the setting other than OFF for this item. It is recommended that you should leave this item at the default setting, 15 seconds, if possible.



- The Job indicator on the control panel is on or blinking during a job.
- When the printer is offline, the printer does not use the function to finish a job automatically.

# **NETWORK MENU**

# ■ TCP/IP SETTINGS

P MODE		
DHCP		MANUAL*, AUTO
BOOTP		
RARP		
IP SETTINGS IP ADDRESS		•
IP ADDRESS	RARP	OFF*, ON
SUBNET MASK		
GATEWAY ADDRESS	IP ADDRESS	0.0.0.0*
DNS PRIMARY ADD		
PRIMARY ADD	GATEWAY ADDRESS	0.0.0.0*
SECONDARY ADD	DNS	
WINS	PRIMARY ADD	0.0.0.0*
ARP/PING	SECONDARY ADD	0.0.0.0*
FTP FTP PRINT	WINS	OFF*, ON
FTP PRINT	ARP/PING	ON*, OFF
FTP SETTINGS		
LPD PRINT		·
RAW PRINT	FTP SETTINGS	ON*, OFF
IPP PRINT		•
HTTPON*, OFF SNTPOFF*, ON RESPONSEON*, OFF IP ADD.RANGE REJECT RX/PRTOFF*, ON REJECT ADD.SET.*2REJ IP 1 to 8 PERMIT RX/PRTOFF*, ON PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8 REJ SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON REJECT ADD.SET.*2REJ IP 1 to 8 PMT SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON PERMIT ADD.SET.*2REJ IP 1 to 8 PMT SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8 MAC ADDRESS SET PERMIT RECEIVEOFF*, ON		
SNTPOFF*, ON RESPONSEON*, OFF IP ADD.RANGE REJECT RX/PRTOFF*, ON REJECT ADD.SET.*2REJ IP 1 to 8 PERMIT RX/PRTOFF*, ON PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8 REJ SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON REJECT ADD.SET.*2REJ IP 1 to 8 PMT SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8 PMT SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8 MAC ADDRESS SET PERMIT RECEIVEOFF*, ON		
RESPONSE	HTTP	ON*, OFF
IP ADD.RANGE  REJECT RX/PRTOFF*, ON  REJECT ADD.SET.*2REJ IP 1 to 8  PERMIT RX/PRTOFF*, ON  PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8  REJ SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON  REJECT ADD.SET.*2REJ IP 1 to 8  PMT SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON  PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8  MAC ADDRESS SET  PERMIT RECEIVEOFF*, ON	SNTP	OFF*, ON
REJECT RX/PRTOFF*, ON REJECT ADD.SET.*2REJ IP 1 to 8 PERMIT RX/PRTOFF*, ON PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8 REJ SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON REJECT ADD.SET.*2REJ IP 1 to 8 PMT SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8 MAC ADDRESS SET PERMIT RECEIVEOFF*, ON	RESPONSE	ON*, OFF
REJECT ADD.SET.*2REJ IP 1 to 8  PERMIT RX/PRTOFF*, ON  PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8  REJ SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON  REJECT ADD.SET.*2REJ IP 1 to 8  PMT SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON  PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8  MAC ADDRESS SET  PERMIT RECEIVEOFF*, ON	IP ADD.RANGE	
PERMIT RX/PRT OFF*, ON PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8 REJ SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON REJECT ADD.SET.*2REJ IP 1 to 8 PMT SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8 MAC ADDRESS SET PERMIT RECEIVEOFF*, ON		
PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8 REJ SET/BROWSEREJ IP 1 to 8 REJECT ADD.SET.*2REJ IP 1 to 8 PMT SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8 MAC ADDRESS SET PERMIT RECEIVEOFF*, ON		
REJ SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON REJECT ADD.SET.*2REJ IP 1 to 8 PMT SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8 MAC ADDRESS SET PERMIT RECEIVEOFF*, ON		
REJECT ADD.SET.*2REJ IP 1 to 8  PMT SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON  PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8  MAC ADDRESS SET  PERMIT RECEIVEOFF*, ON		
PMT SET/BROWSEOFF*, ON PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8 MAC ADDRESS SET PERMIT RECEIVEOFF*, ON	REJ SET/BROWSE	OFF*, ON
PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER IP 1 to 8  MAC ADDRESS SET  PERMIT RECEIVEOFF*, ON		
MAC ADDRESS SET PERMIT RECEIVEOFF*, ON		
PERMIT RECEIVEOFF*, ON	PERMIT ADD.SET.*2	PER IP 1 to 8
PERMIT ADD.SET.*2PER.MAC ADD.1 to 50		
	PERMIT ADD.SET.*2	PER.MAC ADD.1 to 50

<sup>\*1</sup> PROTOCOL is displayed only when IP MODE is set to AUTO.

Specifies the TCP/IP setting for the print server equipped with this printer.

# (IMPORTANT

After changing the settings for this item, cycle the power of the printer or perform a hard reset to make the settings effective.

<sup>\*2</sup> REJECT ADD.SET. and PERMIT ADD.SET. are displayed only when REJECT RX/PRT, PERMIT RX/ PRT, REJ SET/BROWSE, PMT SET/BROWSE, or PERMIT RECEIVE is set to ON.



- To enter a numeric value for IP ADDRESS, SUBNET MASK, or GATEWAY ADDRESS, press [ ◀ ] or [ ▶ ] to move the cursor to each field (an area separated by periods to enter three-digit numbers) in which you want to enter respective values of the address. The numbers in the field blinks, allowing you to enter the value. Pressing [ ▲ ] increases the value and [ ▼ ] decreases the value. After entering values in all the fields, press [OK] to confirm the setting.
- For more details on the setting, see "Chapter 3 Using the Printer on a TCP/IP Network (Windows/UNIX)" in Network Guide.
- This item is displayed only when NETWORK in the I/F CONNECTION options is set to ON.

#### ■ APPLETALK

OFF\*, ON

Specifies whether the printer should use AppleTalk.



# ∅ NOTE

- For more details on AppleTalk, see "Chapter 6 Using the Printer on an AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)" in Network Guide.
- This item is displayed only when NETWORK in the I/F CONNECTION options is set to ON.

### ■ SMB

SMB SERVER	
SMB* <sup>1</sup>	OFF*, ON

<sup>\*1</sup> SMB is displayed only when an optional hard disk is installed, HARD DISK is set to ON, and SMB

Specifies whether the printer should use the SMB protocol.



# ∧ NOTE

This item is displayed only when NETWORK in the I/F CONNECTION options is set to ON.

#### ■ SNMP

ON\*, OFF

Specifies whether the printer should use the SNMP protocol.



This item is displayed only when NETWORK in the I/F CONNECTION options is set to ON.

# ■ SPOOLER

#### OFF\*, ON

Specifies whether the printer should use the Spooler function.



# ∅ NOTE

- For more details on the Spooler function, see "Chapter 2 Common Network Settings" in Network Guide.
- This item is displayed only when NETWORK in the I/F CONNECTION options is set to ON, an optional hard disk is installed, and HARD DISK is set to ON.

#### ■ START WAIT TIME

0 to 300 seconds; 0 seconds\*

Specifies the time interval from when the printer is turned ON to when the protocol starts.



#### NOTE

- For more details on startup waiting time, see "Chapter 2 Common Network Settings" in Network Guide.
- This item is displayed only when NETWORK in the I/F CONNECTION options is set to ON.

# ■ REMOTE UI SET.

REMOTE UION*,	OFF
SSL* <sup>1</sup> OFF*,	ON,

\*1 SSL is displayed only when an optional hard disk is installed, and HARD DISK is set to ON. Specifies whether the printer should use the Remote UI.



### NOTE

- For more details on SSL, see "Chapter 2 Common Network Settings" in Network
- This item is displayed only when NETWORK in the I/F CONNECTION options is set to ON.

### **■** ETHERNET DRIVER

AUTO DETECT	ON*, OFF
	HALF DUPLEX*, FULL DUPLEX
ETHERNET TYPE*1	10 BASE-T*, 100 BASE-TX
MAC ADDRESS	(Display only)

<sup>\*1</sup> COMM.MODE and ETHERNET TYPE are displayed only when AUTO DETECT is set to OFF. Configures the Ethernet driver.



- For more details on configuring the Ethernet driver, see "Chapter 2 Common Network Settings" in Network Guide.
- This item is displayed only when NETWORK in the I/F CONNECTION options is set to ON.

# ■ INIT.N/W SET.

By the initialization in this item, you can reset the network settings to the default settings.

The network settings can be initialized using the following procedure.

- 1. Press [Settings].
- 2. Select INTERFACE MENU using [ ◀ ] and [ ▶ ], then press [OK].
- 3. Select NETWORK MENU using [ ◀ ] and [ ▶ ], then press [OK].
- **4.** Select INIT.N/W SET. using [ ◀ ] and [ ▶ ], then press [OK].
- **5.** <OK?> is displayed. The initialization starts by pressing [OK].
- If you press [Online] without pressing [OK], the printer does not initialize the settings but becomes ready to print.



This item is displayed only when NETWORK in the I/F CONNECTION options is

# EXT.I/F MENU

This is the setting for the expansion interface board installed in the expansion slot of the printer. For more details, see the instruction manual supplied with the expansion interface board.



# ∧ NOTE

This item is displayed only when the optional expansion interface board is installed, and EXT.INTERFACE in I/F CONNECTION is set to ON.

#### CONNECT.RECOG.

#### ON\*, OFF

When you print using a network, you may not obtain proper printout results (Unreadable characters are printed, etc.). In this case, specify OFF for this item.

# EXT.RX BUFFER

# OFF\*, ON

If this item is set to ON, the memory capacity of the printer's receive buffer that receives the data is increased. You can speed up the time the computer exits when you send a large amount of data or complicated data from the computer.



# **IMPORTANT**

After changing the settings for this item, cycle the power of the printer to make the settings effective.



# ∅ NOTE

This item is displayed only when an optional RAM module is installed.

# USER MAIN. Options

### ADJ.START POS.

OFFSET Y (TRAY)	0.20 to 0.20; 0.00* (in.)	
OFFSET X (TRAY)	0.09 to 0.09; 0.00* (in.)	
OFFSET Y (CASS1)	0.20 to 0.20; 0.00* (in.)	
OFFSET X (CASS1)	0.09 to 0.09; 0.00* (in.)	
	0.20 to 0.20; 0.00* (in.)	
OFFSET X (CASS2)*1	0.09 to 0.09; 0.00* (in.)	
OFFSET Y (DUP.)	0.20 to 0.20; 0.00* (in.)	
OFFSET X (DUP.)	0.09 to 0.09; 0.00* (in.)	

<sup>\*1</sup> OFFSETY (CASS2) and OFFSET X (CASS2) are displayed only when the optional paper feeder is installed.

Specifies the printing position of the paper in the specified paper source. Adjusts the position in the vertical direction (Y) or the horizontal direction (X) by the specified value.

The setting values are indicated in inches (in.), and you can adjust the position using [ ▶ ] and [ ◀ ].

If you do not adjust the printing position, specify "0.00" for this item.

OFFSET Y (DUP.) and OFFSET X (DUP.) allow you to specify the printing position of the first page of 2-sided printing. The second page of 2-sided printing follows the settings for each paper source.



#### **IMPORTANT**

If any part of the print image lies outside the printable area after adjusting the printing position, the part will be missing in the print result.



- You can check the adjusted printing position in PRNTPOSNPRINT (See p. 6-64) in the UTILITY menu.
- For adjusting the printing position, see "Adjusting the Printing Position," on p. 7-21.
- Be aware that, when adjusting the printing position for 2-sided printing, the orientation of the images on the reverse pages varies depending on the printing orientation or setting for BIND.LOCATION (See p. 6-32).

# RECVRY PRINTING

#### ON\*, OFF

Specifies whether to print the partially printed page when the printer stops printing due to a paper jam or an error occurring.

If ON is specified for this item, the printer prints from the page in which a paper jam or error occurred.

If OFF is specified for this item, the printer does not print from the partially printed page but prints from the next page when a paper jam or error has occurred.

When the printer is performing 2-sided printing, it does not print the reverse page of the partially printed page. The printing starts from the front side of the next sheet.

# SPECIAL MODE J

# OFF\*, ON

Specifies whether the printer should stop printing, displaying the message <41 CHK PAPER SZE> or continue printing when TRAY PAPER SIZE, CASSETTE1 SIZE, or CASSETTE2 SIZE is set to MIXED SIZES.

If OFF is specified, the printer may stop printing, displaying <41 CHK PAPER SZE>, when the paper size specified in the application is different from the size of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray or paper cassette. The paper on which the error occurred is output automatically. You can also continue printing by pressing [Online]. However, the data may not be printed properly, or a paper jam may occur.

If ON is specified, the printer prints without performing a print check even when the paper size specified in the application is different from the size of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray or paper cassette. However, the printing speed may drop. Also, because the paper is printed at the paper size specified in the application, blank areas may appear on the printed paper or part of the images may be missing when the size of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray or paper cassette is different from the paper size specified in the application.



For automatic 2-sided printing, <41 CHK PAPER SZE> always appears and the printer stops printing regardless of the setting for this item.

# SUBSTITUTE SIZE

# OFF\*, ON

When the paper cassette for the paper size to be used is not set in the printer, the printer switches the paper source to the following paper cassettes and prints.

Printer Driver Setting		Size of the Paper to Be Printed	
A4	$\rightarrow$	Letter	
Letter	$\rightarrow$	A4	

If ON is specified, the printer switches the paper size.

If OFF is specified, the printer does not switch the paper size but stops printing, displaying an error message.



Even if ON is specified, the printer does not switch the paper size when the paper source for the paper size is empty.

# SP.IMAGE MODE

#### OFF\*, LEVEL1, LEVEL2

Toner on the parts dense in color may not fix onto the paper and not printed properly. In this case, specify LEVEL1 for this item. If the problem is not solved by specifying LEVEL1, specify LEVEL2.



- If this solves the problem, reset the setting to the default value, OFF.
- If LEVEL1 or LEVEL2 is specified, the print density may be lighter than when OFF is specified because the printer prints with the toner consumption adjusted.

# **HDD MAINTENANCE**

#### ■ HDD ALL ERASE

# OFF\*, ON

Specifies whether to completely erase the printed or deleted data from the hard disk. By erasing data completely, readout of the data by special software is prevented.

If ON is specified, the printer performs the process for completely erasing the data when deleting the data in the hard disk.

If OFF is specified, the printer does not perform the process for completely erasing the data.

#### IMPORTANT

The HDD All Erase function is effective only for the jobs received after you specify ON for this setting. The jobs received before you specify ON for this setting are not completely erased. In this case, cycle the power of the printer or perform a hard reset.



# ∧ NOTE

- If ON is specified, the printer may take time to process the data in order to perform the process for completely erasing the data.
- This item is displayed only when an optional hard disk is installed.

#### QUICK FORMAT

Erases the contents of the hard disk.

QUICK FORMAT performs a quick format of the hard disk. Perform this operation when a problem has occurred to the hard disk.

If the problem is not solved by executing QUICK FORMAT, perform STD FORMAT.

#### (III) IMPORTANT

- If the message <CANNOT EXECUTE> appears when QUICK FORMAT is executed, the hard disk is not formatted.
- When performing QUICK FORMAT, remove all the interface cables (the LAN cable, USB cable, and printer cable) connected to this printer.



#### ∧ NOTE

This item is displayed only when an optional hard disk is installed, and HDD ALL ERASE is set to OFF.

# ■ STD FORMAT

Erases the contents of the hard disk.

STD FORMAT performs a standard format of the hard disk. Perform this operation when the problem is not solved by executing QUICK FORMAT.

# IMPORTANT

- If the message <CANNOT EXECUTE> appears when STD FORMAT is executed, the hard disk is not formatted.
- When performing STD FORMAT, remove all the interface cables (the LAN cable, USB cable, and printer cable) connected to this printer.
- While STD FORMAT is being executed, <FORMATTING> is displayed in the display. Wait for a moment until the format is completed.



This item is displayed only when an optional hard disk is installed.

#### SPPRINT MODE

#### ■ COATED PAPER

#### OFF\*, ON

Specify the setting for this item according to the type of the coated paper to be used.

- OFF: Specify when printing coated paper of 27.9 lb Bond to 44.4 lb Cover (105 to 120 g/m<sup>2</sup>).
- ON: Specify when printing coated paper of 44.5 to 59.2 lb Cover (121 to 160 g/m<sup>2</sup>).

#### ■ CURL ADJUSTMENT

# OFF\*, ON

When printed paper curls (the printed side curls outward), specify whether the curl should be straightened out.

- OFF: The curl of the printed paper is not straightened out.
- ON: The curl of the printed paper is straightened out. By doing so, you may improve the printout results.

# IMPORTANT

If continuous printing is performed with this item set to ON, the printing speed may drop.

# **UPDATE FIRMWARE**

#### ■ USB

This item is to be executed only when the firmware of the printer needs to be updated.

#### ■ NETWORK

This item is to be executed only when the firmware of the printer needs to be updated.

# 1ST CALIBRATION

# AFTER JOBS\*, IMMEDIATELY

When you turn the printer ON, calibration is performed depending on the inside state of the printer. Specify the timing of calibration.

If AFTER JOBS is specified, calibration is performed at the completion of the first printing after the printer is turned ON.

If IMMEDIATELY is specified, calibration is performed immediately after the printer is turned ON. When calibration is performed immediately after the printer is turned ON, excessive time is required until the printer is ready to print.

# PCL SETUP Options

# PAPER SAVE

#### OFF\*, ON

Specifies whether the printer outputs the blank page that can be created due to no data existing between two Form Feed codes sent from an application.

If ON is specified, the printer does not output the blank page. If OFF is specified, the printer outputs the blank page.

If you use this function, you can save paper because the blank pages are not output.

# PORTRAIT\*, LANDSCAPE

Enables you to set the paper orientation.

If PORTRAIT is selected, the print image is printed in portrait orientation regardless of the orientation of the paper in the paper cassette.



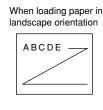


When loading paper in portrait orientation



If LANDSCAPE is selected, the print image is printed in landscape orientation regardless of the orientation of the paper in the paper cassette.





When loading paper in portrait orientation



# **FONT NUMBER**

0 to 89:0\*

Enables you to set the default font typeface for this printer function using the corresponding font numbers. Valid font numbers are from 0 to 89.

# POINT SIZE

4.00 to 999.75 point; 12.00 point\*

If the number selected in FONT NUMBER is that of a proportionally spaced scalable font, this option appears in the PCL SETUP options. It enables you to specify a point size for the default font. The point size can be adjusted in increments of 0.25 pts.

# 0.44 to 99.99 cpi; 10.00 cpi\*

If the number selected in FONT NUMBER is that of a fixed pitch scalable font, Pitch appears in the PCL SETUP options. It enables you to specify the pitch for the default font. The pitch can be adjusted in increments of 0.01 cpi (characters per inch).

### FORM LINES

#### 5 to 128 lines; 60 lines\*

Enables you to specify the number of lines to be printed on a page. You can specify from 5 to 128 lines.

# SYMBOL SET

PC8\*, ROMAN8, ROMAN9, ISOL1, ISOL2, ISOL5, ISOL6, ISOL9, PC775, PC8DN, PC850, PC852, PC858, PC8TK, PC1004, WINL1, WINL2, WINL5, WINBALT, DESKTOP, PSTEXT, LEGAL, ISO4, ISO6, ISO11, ISO15, ISO17, ISO21, ISO60, ISO69, WIN 30, MCTEXT

Enables you to select the symbol set most suited to the needs of the host computer.

#### CUSTOM SIZE

#### DO NOT SET\*, SET

Enables you to specify a custom paper size. If SET is selected, you can enter a custom size.



# ∧ NOTE

You can only select the custom paper size entered with settings from the printer driver.

# UNIT OF MEASURE

# Inches\*, Millimeters

Enables you to specify the unit of measurement you would like to use to specify your custom paper size.



# 

This item is displayed only when CUSTOM SIZE is set to SET.

# X DIMENSION

3.00 to 8.50 in; 8.50 in\* (76.2 to 215.9 mm; 215.9 mm\*)

Enables you to specify the X dimension of the custom paper. The X dimension can be adjusted between 3.00 in. (76.2 mm) and 8.50 in. (215.9 mm) in increments of 0.01 in. (0.1 mm).

This function can be very useful when part of the printed image is cut off. Increasing this dimension may allow some of the missing text to be correctly printed. Make sure you do not increase the X dimension beyond the actual size of the paper you are using for printing.



This item is displayed only when CUSTOM SIZE is set to SET.

# Y DIMENSION

5.00 to 14.00 in; 14.00 in\* (127.0 to 355.6 mm; 355.6 mm\*)

Enables you to specify the Y dimension of the custom paper. The Y dimension can be adjusted between 5.00 in. (127.0 mm) and 14.00 in. (355.6 mm) in increments of 0.01 in. (0.1 mm).

This function can be very useful when part of the printed image is cut off. Increasing this dimension may allow some of the missing text to be correctly printed. Make sure you do not increase the Y dimension beyond the actual size of the paper you are using for printing.



This item is displayed only when CUSTOM SIZE is set to SET.

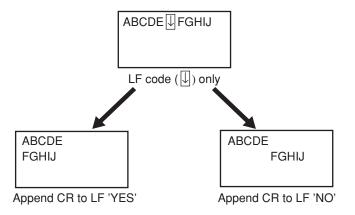
# APPEND CR TO LF

NO\*, YES

Enables you to specify whether to append a carriage return (CR) when line feed code (LF) is received.

If YES is selected, the print head moves to the beginning of the next line when line feed code is received.

If NO is selected, the print head moves down to the next line when line feed code is received, and the margin does not change (such as to the beginning of the next line).



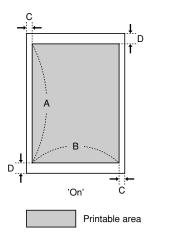
# **ENLRG A4 WIDTH**

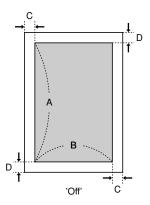
# OFF\*, ON

Determines whether to expand the printable area of A4 size paper to that of Letter size in width.

If ON is selected, all the area on a page 0.17 in. (4.23 mm) from the top and bottom edges and 0.13 in. (3.39 mm) from the left and right edges is available for printing on A4 paper. Only the width increases.

If OFF is selected, all the area on a page 0.17 in. (4.23 mm) from the top, bottom, left, and right edges is available for printing on A4 paper.





Settings	ON	OFF
A: Length	11.36 in. (288.54 mm)	
B: Width	8.00 in. (203.22 mm)	7.94 in. (201.54 mm)
C: Left and right edges	0.13 in. (3.39 mm)	0.17 in. (4.23 mm)
D: Top and bottom edges	0.17 in. (4.23 mm)	



- This setting is applicable for A4 paper only.
- This setting is applicable for portrait orientation only.

# **UFR II SETUP Options**

# PAPER SAVE

# ON\*, OFF

Specifies whether the printer outputs the blank page that can be created due to no data existing in the page data sent from an application.

If ON is specified, the printer does not output the blank page. If OFF is specified, the printer outputs the blank page.

If you use this function, you can save paper because the blank pages are not output.

# **UTILITY** Menu Settings



#### ∧ NOTE

For the output samples of CONFIG.PAGE, NW STATUS PRINT, and PRNTPOSNPRINT, see "The Lists Common to All the Settings in the Operation Mode," on p. 10-2. For the output sample of the PCL fonts list, see "The Lists Common to Certain Settings in the Operation Mode," on p. 10-4.

# CONFIG.PAGE

Prints the capacity of the built-in memory (RAM) or the contents specified in the SETUP menu. You can select this item regardless of the setting for the operation mode.



#### ∧ NOTE

CONFIG.PAGE is designed to be printed on Letter size paper. Load a sheet of Letter size paper in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray.

# **PCL UTILITY**

#### **FONTS LIST**

Prints information about the printer settings in the PCL mode.

#### **FONTS LIST**

A list of the fonts that can be used in the PCL mode is printed.



# ∧ NOTE

FONTS LIST is designed to be printed on Letter size paper. Load a sheet of Letter size paper in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray.

# **CLEANING**

Cleans the fixing roller.

When cleaning is performed, the message <CLEANING> appears in the display. Load Letter size paper in the multi-purpose tray, and then press [Online]. The fixing roller is cleaned while the loaded paper is being fed.



For details on the procedure for cleaning the fixing roller, see "Cleaning the Fixing Roller," on p. 7-19.

# NW STATUS PRINT

Prints the version number and the settings of the print server equipped with this printer.



#### ∅ NOTE

NW STATUS PRINT is designed to be printed on Letter size paper. Load a sheet of Letter size paper in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray.

# EXT.I/F PRINT

Prints the version, settings, etc. of the expansion interface board installed in the expansion slot of the printer.



#### NOTE

This item is displayed only when the expansion interface board is installed.

# **CALIBRATION**

COLOR REGIS.ADJ, DENSITY CONTROL, DEN.MEDIAN CONT, FULL **CALIBRATE** 

Adjusts a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" and controls the print density (adjusts color hues).



#### **IMPORTANT**

If you execute this item frequently, this may affect the life of the toner cartridges.

#### COLOR REGIS.ADJ

A phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" is adjusted by controlling the shifts of the print start positions of each color. Execute when the phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" occurs.



### ∧ NOTE

It takes approximately 80 seconds to execute COLOR REGIS.ADJ.

#### **DENSITY CONTROL**

Controls the maximum print density and median print density. Execute when the colors have changed and the data is not printed in the correct colors (specified colors).



### NOTE

It takes approximately 37 seconds to execute DENSITY CONTROL.

#### **DEN.MEDIAN CONT**

Controls the median print density. Execute when the colors of the median print density have changed and the data is not printed in the correct colors (specified colors).



# ∧ NOTE

It takes approximately 37 seconds to execute DEN.MEDIAN CONT.

#### **FULL CALIBRATE**

Executes COLOR REGIS.ADJ and DENSITY CONTROL. Execute when you want to adjust a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" and control the print density (adjust color hues) at once.



# ∧ NOTE

It takes approximately 133 seconds to execute FULL CALIBRATE.

# **PRNTPOSNPRINT**

The printing position adjusted in ADJ.START POS. (See p. 6-51) is printed. Check the printout results to confirm the setting for ADJ.START POS.



#### NOTE

For adjusting the printing position, see "Adjusting the Printing Position," on p. 7-21.

# JOB Menu Settings

# ENCRYPTED PRINT

Prints encrypted secured print data.

Encrypted secured print is different from secured print in that the data security is reinforced on communication between the computer and printer and when the data is saved on a hard disk by encrypting the data itself.

Perform an encrypted secured print job using the following procedure.

- 1. Select ENCRYPTED PRINT in the JOB menu, then press [OK].
- 2. If the user names appear, select the target user name, then press [OK]. When the user of all the saved print jobs is the same (or when there is only one job), the user name is not displayed. Proceed to Step 3.
- 3. If the file names appear, select the target file name, then press [OK]. When only one print job is saved, the file name is not displayed. Proceed to Step 4.
- **4.** Enter the password. The specified file is printed.



#### 

- The password is to be specified with 1 to 48 alphanumeric characters. Because only numbers can be entered from the control panel, enter the password using the following keys on the control panel. Print an encrypted secured print job from the Remote UI if the password contains any alphabetic characters (See Remote UI Guide).
- Determines the entered password ......[OK]
- Specify the file name, user name, and password in the printer driver.
- The encrypted secured print data is deleted automatically after being printed. Alternatively, encrypted secured print data is deleted by turning the printer OFF or performing a hard reset or soft reset.
- You can automatically delete the unprinted encrypted secured print data when a fixed period of time has elapsed. Specify the setting for the time when the printer delete data in SECURING TIME (See p. 6-20) in the CONTROL MENU options in the SETUP menu.
- Up to 64 encrypted secured print jobs can be saved.
- This item is displayed only when an optional hard disk is installed, HARD DISK is set to ON, and there is any encrypted secured print job.

Prints secured print data.

Secured print is a function that prints data with the file name, user name, and password previously specified for the data on the computer using the printer's control panel. Because you cannot print without specifying the file name, user name, and password in this item, this function is convenient when you print data that you do not want others to read.

Perform a secured print job using the following procedure.

- 1. Select SECURED PRINT in the JOB menu, then press [OK].
- 2. If the user names appear, select the target user name, then press [OK]. When the user of all the saved print jobs is the same (or when there is only one job), the user name is not displayed. Proceed to Step 3.
- 3. If the file names appear, select the target file name, then press [OK]. When only one print job is saved, the file name is not displayed. Proceed to Step 4.
- **4.** Enter the password. The specified file is printed.



- The password is to be specified only with numbers of 1 to 7 digits. Enter the password using the following keys on the control panel.

  - Determines the entered password ...... [OK]
- Specify the file name, user name, and password in the printer driver.
- The secured print data is deleted automatically after being printed. Alternatively, the encrypted secured print data is deleted by turning the printer OFF or performing a hard reset or soft reset.
- You can automatically delete the unprinted secured print data when a fixed period of time has elapsed. Specify the setting for the time when the printer delete data in SECURING TIME (See p. 6-20) in the CONTROL MENU options in the SETUP menu.
- Up to 64 secured print jobs can be saved.
- This item is displayed only when an optional hard disk is installed, HARD DISK is set to ON, and there is any secured print job.

Prints a list of the jobs stored in a box (the jobs saved on the hard disk).

The store job list prints the box name, box number, file name, and others.



#### ∧ NOTE

- If a password is specified for the box, the jobs in the box are not printed on the store job list.
- This item is displayed only when an optional hard disk is installed, HARD DISK is set to ON, and there is any saved job.

# STOREJOB PRINT

Prints a job stored in a box.

To store a job in a box, select [Store] in the printer driver, and then specify the box. Because the jobs in a box are not deleted even after turning the printer OFF, it is convenient if you store the documents that you want to print repeatedly in a box.

Perform a store job print using the following procedure.

- 1. Select STOREJOB PRINT in the JOB menu, then press [OK].
- 2. The box numbers are displayed. Select the number for the box in which the job is stored, then press [OK].
- 3. If <PASSWORD> appears in the display, press [OK], and then enter the password.
  - If a password is not specified only for the box, the entry screen for entering a password does not appear. Proceed to Step 4.
- 4. Select the name of the target file, then press [OK]. The specified file is printed.



# ∧ NOTE

- The password is to be specified only with numbers of 1 to 7 digits. Enter the password using the following keys on the control panel.
- Determines the entered password ......[OK]
- The saved jobs remains in the hard disk even after being printed. When you want to delete the saved jobs, use the Remote UI. (See Remote UI Guide)
- Up to the total of 100 jobs in all the boxes can be saved.
- This item is displayed only when an optional hard disk is installed, HARD DISK is set to ON, and there is any saved job.

# JOB LOG LIST

Prints the job logs printed from the computer.

File names, print dates, and other information are printed on the job log list.



# ∧ NOTE

- If the printer has no job log, nothing is printed.
- Up to 60 jobs when an optional hard disk installed and up to 48 jobs without the hard disk can be printed in the job log list.

# STORE LOG LST

Prints the job logs printed from a box.

File names, print dates, and other information are printed on the store log list.



# ∧ NOTE

- If the printer has no job log, nothing is printed.
- Up to 60 job logs are printed on the stored log list.
- This item is displayed only when an optional hard disk is installed, and HARD DISK is set to ON.

# REPORTLOG LST

Prints the job logs of the printed CONFIG.PAGE or NW STATUS PRINT.

Print dates, etc are printed on the report log list.



# ∅ NOTE

- If the printer has no job log, nothing is printed.
- Up to 60 jobs when an optional hard disk installed and up to 16 jobs without the hard disk can be printed in the report log list.

# **RESET** Menu Settings

# SOFT RESET/HARD RESET

Resets the printer when a problem has occurred or you want to cancel printing.

If you perform a soft reset, the printer stops the current process and deletes the jobs in the printer memory, received print data, and the job being processed. If you perform a hard reset, the printer cancels all the process and deletes the jobs.

To perform a soft reset, select SOFT RESET in the RESET menu, and then press [OK].

To perform a hard reset, select SOFT RESET in the RESET menu, hold down [OK] for 3 seconds or more to display HARD RESET, and then release the button.



# ∅ NOTE

- Be sure to cancel printing from the computer before performing a soft reset.
- When the soft reset or hard reset is performed, the data being printed and the data being received by all the interfaces is deleted. Therefore, perform printing from the computer again as needed.
- If you perform a soft reset or hard reset, the data that has been already sent to the memory are all deleted even if it is the data of other interface. If you are using the printer on a network, be careful so that this operation does not affect the data from other computers when resetting the printer.
- If you perform a hard reset while the printer is receiving data, the data that has not yet been sent to the memory will be sent after the reset. However, the data may not be printed properly.

# **FORM FFFD**

When a job is canceled from the computer or the data is less than one page, the data may remain in the printer memory, and the job may not be completed properly. As long as the printer remains in this state, you cannot print the next job because the printer cannot receive the next data. In this case, force the printer to output the print data using the procedure for this item.

## **IMPORTANT**

- Data from PCL/UFR II Printer Driver cannot be output.
- If you have output data, the data being printed is deleted. Print the data from the computer again.
- When you are using an optional hard disk, set MODE TIMEOUT in the SETUP menu to a setting other than OFF. It is recommended that you should specify the default setting, 15 seconds if possible.



### ∧ NOTE

- The Job indicator is on when any print data remains in the printer memory or when no print data remains in the printer but a job has not yet been completed.
- If MODE TIMEOUT for a job is specified, data less than one page is also output automatically when the specified time has elapsed (Data from PCL/UFR II Printer Driver is not output.). MODE TIMEOUT for a job is set to 15 seconds in the default settings.
- If the Job indicator does not go off even after outputting the data, perform a soft reset. (See the previous item)

### SHUT DOWN

Shuts down the functions of the hard disk.

If a hard disk is installed, the printer may be turned OFF during access to the hard disk when you turn the printer OFF. To prevent this accident, shut down the functions of the hard disk before turning the printer OFF.

If you select SHUT DOWN in the RESET menu, the message that asks you if you execute a shut down appears. Pressing [OK] at this point executes the shut down.

After executing a shut down, the printer cannot receive data, and panel operation is disabled. Cycle the power of the printer if you want to print the data again.



### ∅ NOTE

This item is displayed only when an optional hard disk is installed, and HARD DISK is set to ON.

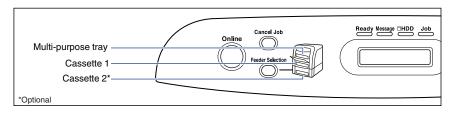
## **SELECT FEEDER Menu Settings**

### PAPER SOURCE

### AUTO\*, CASSETTE 1, CASSETTE 2\*1, TRAY

\*1 CASSETTE2 is displayed only when the optional paper feeder is installed.

Selects the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray from which the printer feed paper. After a paper source is selected, the corresponding Paper Source indicator comes on.





- The installed paper cassettes and multi-purpose tray usually become the target paper source when the printer feeds paper automatically. However, you can except them from the target paper source.
- If paper of the same size is loaded in two or more paper sources when the paper source setting is specified to be selected automatically, paper is fed from the upper paper source regardless of the status of the paper source indicators. When the paper source runs out of paper, the paper source automatically switches to other one in which paper of the same size is loaded.
- If INVLDPAPER TRAY (See p. 6-26) is set to ON, the setting for this item is ignored, and the printer feeds paper from the multi-purpose tray when paper that is the same size as the paper size of the received data is not loaded in the selected paper source.
- When feeding paper from the multi-purpose tray, you need to specify the size of the loaded paper previously. The default value is "LTR".

### TRAY PAPER SIZE

LTR\*, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZE R, ENV. ISO-C5, ENV. COM10, ENV. MONARCH, ENV. DL, ENV. ISO-B5, INDEX CARD. STMT, FLSC, 16K, A5, B5, A4

Specifies the size of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray.

You can specify the same setting in TRAY PAPER SIZE in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu. For more details, see "TRAY PAPER SIZE," on p. 6-22.

### CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2)

LTR\*, LGL, EXEC, MIXED SIZES, CUSTOM SIZE, CUSTOM SIZE R, FLSC, 16K, A5, B5, A4

Specifies the size of the paper loaded in the paper cassettes (Cassette 1 and 2).

You can specify the same setting in CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu. For more details, see "CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n. = 1, 2)," on p. 6-23.

#### TRAY PAPER TYPE

PLAIN PAPER\*, PLAIN PAPER H, HEAVY PAPER 1, HEAVY PAPER 2, HEAVY PAPER 3, TRANSPARENCIES, ENVELOPE, COATED PAPER, LABEL, ROUGH PAPER, MIXED TYPES

Specifies the type of the paper to be loaded in the multi-purpose tray. This printer internally applies the optimum print mode for the paper type specified in this item.

You can specify the same setting in TRAY PAPER TYPE in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu. For more details, see "TRAY PAPER TYPE," on p. 6-27.

## CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2)

#### PLAIN PAPER\*, PLAIN PAPER H, ROUGH PAPER, MIXED TYPES

Specifies the type of the paper to be loaded in the paper cassettes (Cassette 1 and 2). This printer internally applies the optimum print mode for the paper type specified in this item.

You can specify the same setting in CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2) in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu. For more details, see "CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2)," on p. 6-29.

### 2-SIDED PRINT.

### OFF\*, ON

Specifies whether the printer should print on one side or both sides of the paper.

You can specify the same setting in 2-SIDED PRINT. in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu. For more details, see "2-SIDED PRINT.," on p. 6-30.

## **Routine Maintenance**



This chapter describes the procedures for maintaining the printer such as replacing the cartridges and cleaning the printer.

Replacing Toner Cartridges
When a Message Appears7-2
Replacing a Toner Cartridge
Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges
Storing Toner Cartridges
Cleaning the Fixing Roller7-19
Adjusting the Printing Position
Checking the Printing Position
Adjusting the Printing Position
Cleaning the Outside of the Printer
Moving the Printer
Handling the Printer

## **Replacing Toner Cartridges**

This section describes how to replace or handle the toner cartridges and precautions on storing them.

## When a Message Appears

Toner cartridges are consumable products. If the toner is running out during printing, a message appears in the display.

Message	When it is Displayed	Contents and Remedies
(X indicates K, Y, M, or C)	When a toner cartridge needs to be replaced soon	<ul> <li>You can continue to print.</li> <li>Have ready a new toner cartridge of the indicated color.</li> <li>It is recommended that you replace the toner cartridge before printing a large amount of data.</li> </ul>
(X indicates K, Y, M, or C)	When a toner cartridge needs to be replaced soon	<ul> <li>The printer stops printing.</li> <li>Pressing [Online] continues the job.</li> <li>Have ready a new toner cartridge of the indicated color.</li> <li>It is recommended that you replace the toner cartridge before printing a large amount of data.</li> </ul>
9G CHK X TNR (X indicates K, Y, M, or C)	When there is a possibility that the toner cartridge has reached the end of its life	- You can continue to print You can continue printing for a while, however, as this may result in damage to the printer, it is recommended to replace the toner cartridge with a new one.
1G CHG.X TNR (X indicates K, Y, M, or C)	When a toner cartridge has reached the end of its life.	<ul> <li>When &lt;1G CHG.K TNR&gt; appears, the printer stops printing, and you cannot continue the job.</li> <li>When &lt;1G CHG.X TNR&gt; (X = Y, M, C) appears, you can print only in black and white.</li> <li>Replace the toner cartridge of the indicated color with a new one.</li> </ul>

<sup>\*</sup> Whether <16 PREP."color" TNR> or <16 CHG."color" TNR> appears when lifetime of a toner cartridge has reached depends on the setting for WARNING STEP (See p. 6-14) in the SETUP menu. The printer is set to display <16 PREP."color" TNR> in the default settings.

<sup>\* &</sup>quot;K", "Y", "C", and "M" in a message indicate Black, Yellow, Cyan, and Magenta respectively.



If the printing appears faint or inconsistent even when a message does not appear, this may be due to any toner cartridge reaching the end of its life. Do not continue to use the toner cartridge and replace it with new one when there is deterioration in print quality. When you are replacing a toner cartridge, be sure to use a toner cartridge designed for this printer.

Model name	Supported Canon Genuine Toner Cartridge
LBP5360	Cartridge 111 Black Cartridge 111 Yellow Cartridge 111 Magenta Cartridge 111 Cyan



#### **NOTE**

 The lifetime of the toner cartridges (Canon Genuine Cartridges) used in this printer are as follows. The numbers of the pages are estimated when printing in the following conditions.

Printing ratio: 5 %; Print density: the default; Paper size: A4 or Letter; Paper type: plain paper

- Cartridge 111 Black: approx. 6,000 pages
- Cartridge 111 Yellow: approx. 6,000 pages
- Cartridge 111 Magenta: approx. 6,000 pages
- Cartridge 111 Cyan: approx. 6,000 pages
- Depending on the printing preferences or printing environment such as the intermittency of printing, paper types and paper sizes, the number of pages you can print may be half this number.
- When the toner consumption is low due to low printing ratio, printing of the expected number of print pages may not be able to be achieved. Also, if you print in color, more than one cartridges may reach the end of their life at the same time.
- Even if you print in black and white, this may affect the life of the cartridges of magenta, yellow, and cyan due to the printer structure.

## Replacing a Toner Cartridge

If any of the following messages appears, replace the toner cartridge of the indicated color with a new one.

- <1G CHG.K TNR>...Replace the black toner cartridge.
- <1G CHG.Y TNR>...Replace the yellow toner cartridge.
- <1G CHG.M TNR>...Replace the magenta toner cartridge.
- <1G CHG.C TNR>...Replace the cyan toner cartridge.



### WARNING

Do not throw a used toner cartridge into open flames, as this may cause the toner remaining inside the cartridge to ignite, resulting in burns or a fire.

### A CAUTION

Take care not to allow the toner to come into contact with your hands or clothing, as this will dirty your hands or clothing. If they become dirty, wash them immediately with cold water. Washing with warm water will set the toner and make it impossible to remove the toner stains.

### IMPORTANT

- Dispose of the packing materials according to local regulations.
- Be sure to use only the toner cartridges designed for this printer.

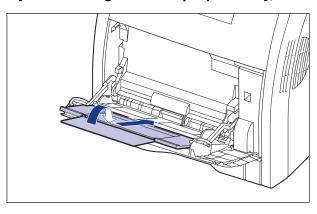


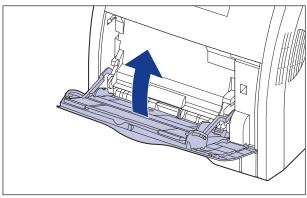
#### NOTE

- For details on handling toner cartridges, see "Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges,"
- The packing materials may be changed in form or position to be placed, or may be added or removed without notice.



### If you are using the multi-purpose tray, close it.





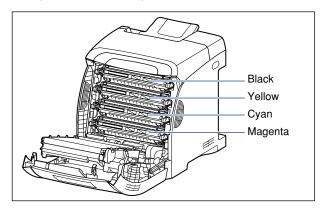
## 2 Open the front cover.

Holding the opening of the front cover, open it gently.

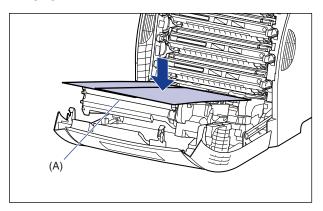


## IMPORTANT

The toner cartridges are installed in order of black, yellow, cyan, and magenta from the top as shown in the figure.



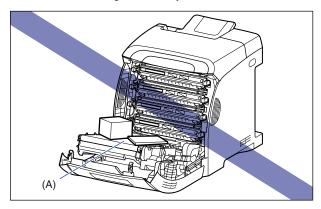
3 Place paper (Letter size paper is recommended) on the transfer belt of the ETB unit (A) as shown in the figure so that the paper is not shifted.

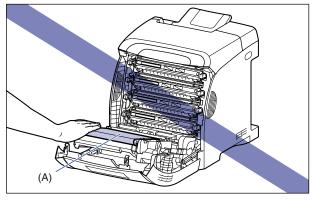


## (IMPORTANT)

• When installing or removing the toner cartridges, be sure to place paper on the transfer belt of the ETB unit to protect the belt.

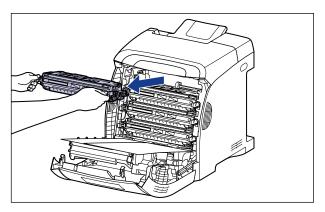
• Do not place any object on or touch the transfer belt (A) of the ETB unit. The transfer belt of the ETB unit is supplied with a function that cleans itself, therefore, do not clean the belt even when the toner is on it. If the ETB unit is broken or transfer belt is damaged, this may result in misfeeds or deterioration in print quality.





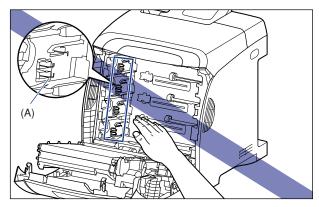
## Holding the toner cartridge to be replaced by the blue tabs on the both sides, pull it horizontally.

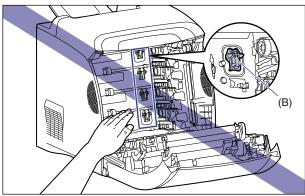
Holding the toner cartridge with your both hands firmly, pull it out so that you do not touch the transfer belt of the ETB unit.



## IMPORTANT

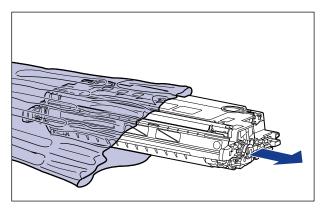
Do not touch the high-voltage contact (A) or the electrical contacts (B) shown in the figure, as this may result in damage to the printer.





## Take the new toner cartridge out of the protective bag after taking it out of the package.

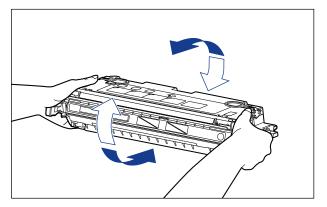
There is a cut near the arrow on the protective bag, so you can open it by hand. However, if you cannot open it by hand, use scissors to open the protective bag so as not to damage the toner cartridge.



### IMPORTANT

Keep the protective bag for the toner cartridge. It may be required after taking out the toner cartridge for printer maintenance.

## 6 Hold the toner cartridge as shown in the figure, shake it gently 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner inside the cartridge.

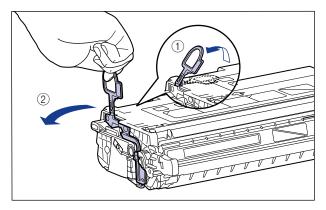


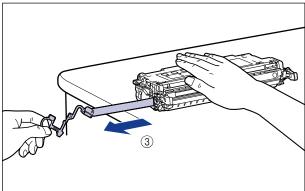
## IMPORTANT

- If toner is not distributed evenly, this may result in deterioration in print quality. Be sure to carry out this procedure properly.
- Be sure to shake the toner cartridge gently. If you do not shake the cartridge gently, toner may spill out.

7 Place the toner cartridge on a flat surface, fold back the tab of the sealing tape ①②, and then pull out the sealing tape (approx. 19 in. (48 cm) long) gently ③ while supporting the toner cartridge.

Remove the sealing tape by hooking your fingers into the tab and pulling it out straight in the direction of the arrow.



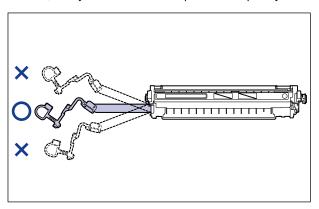


## **A** CAUTION

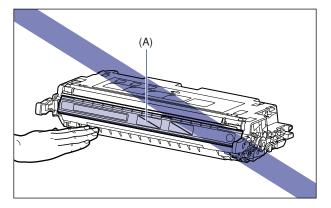
If the sealing tape is pulled out forcefully or stopped at midpoint, toner may spill out. If the toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and immediately consult a physician.

## **IMPORTANT**

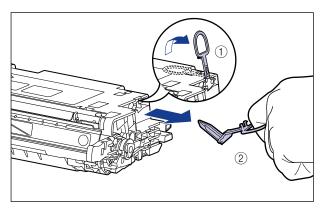
• Do not pull the sealing tape diagonally, upwards, or downwards. If the tape is severed, it may become difficult to pull out completely.



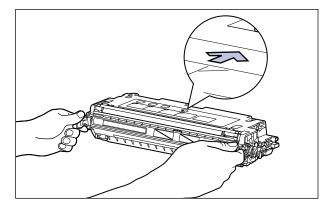
- Pull out the sealing tape completely from the toner cartridge. If any tape remains in the toner cartridge, this may result in poor print quality.
- When pulling out the sealing tape, be careful not to hold the drum protective shutter (A) with your hands.



8 Hook your finger into the tab and remove the packing materials as shown in the figure.

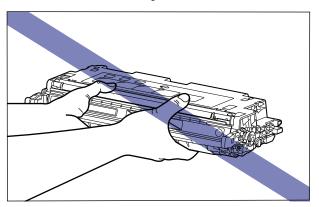


9 Hold the toner cartridge properly with the arrowed side facing up as shown in the figure.



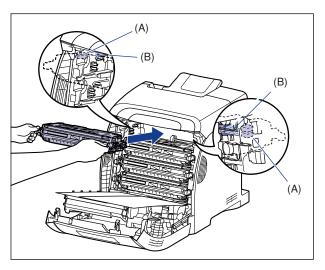
## IMPORTANT

Do not hold the toner cartridge in a manner that is not directed in this procedure.



# 10 Hold the toner cartridge with both hands and install it into the printer.

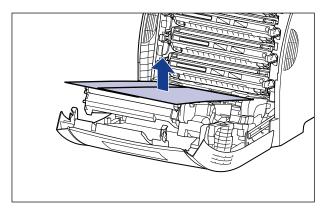
Align (A) of the toner cartridge that you want to replace with the slots (B) to which the label of the same color is attached, then insert the cartridge until it stops.



### IMPORTANT

Be sure to install the toner cartridge by pushing it firmly. If the toner cartridges are not installed firmly, this may result in deterioration in print quality.

## 11 Remove the paper.

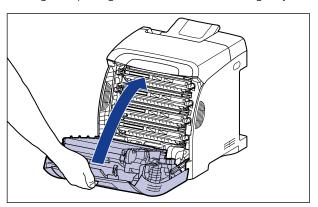


### **IMPORTANT**

When removing the paper, be careful not to touch or damage the transfer belt of the ETB unit.

## 12 Close the front cover.

Holding the opening of the front cover, close it gently.



### **A** CAUTION

When closing the front cover, be careful not to catch your fingers.

- **IMPORTANT** 
  - If you cannot close the front cover, check if the toner cartridge is installed properly. If you try to close the front cover forcefully, this may result in damage to the printer.
  - Do not leave the front cover open for a long time after installing the toner cartridge.

## **Precautions for Handling Toner Cartridges**

A toner cartridge consists of light-sensitive components and intricate mechanical components. Handling the toner cartridge without due care may lead to damage to the toner cartridge or deterioration in print quality. Be careful of the following points when removing or installing the toner cartridge.



### WARNING

Do not throw a used toner cartridge into open flames, as this may cause the toner remaining inside the cartridge to ignite, resulting in burns or a fire.



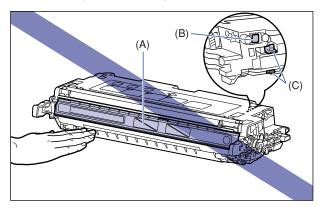
### A CAUTION

Take care not to allow the toner to come into contact with your hands or clothing, as this will dirty your hands or clothing. If they become dirty, wash them immediately with cold water. Washing with warm water will set the toner and make it impossible to remove the toner stains.

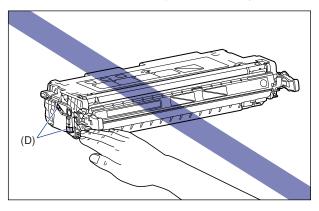


#### **IMPORTANT**

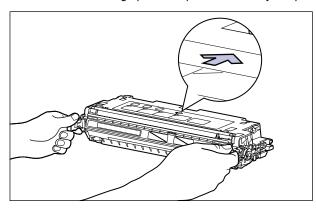
- When you take the toner cartridge out of the printer for servicing the printer, place the toner cartridge into the original protective bag, or wrap it with a thick cloth immediately.
- When replacing a toner cartridge, be sure to replace the toner cartridge of the same color.
- Do not expose the toner cartridge to direct sunlight or strong light.
- Print quality may deteriorate if you touch or damage the photosensitive drum inside the toner cartridge. Be sure not to touch or open the drum protective shutter (A). Do not jolt the toner cartridge memory (B) or bring it near a magnetic field. Be careful not to hold or touch areas that are not specified in this procedure, such as the sensor (C). This may result in damage to the cartridge.

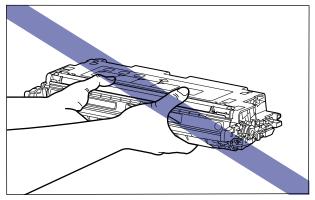


• Be careful not to hold or touch areas that are not specified in this procedure, such as the electrical contacts (D). This may result in damage to the cartridge.



• When handling a toner cartridge, hold it properly as shown in the figure and handle it with the arrowed side facing up. Do not place it vertically or upside-down.





• Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the toner cartridge.

- · Condensation may form in and on a toner cartridge if it is brought into an environment that exposes it to sudden changes in temperature and/or humidity. If you move the toner cartridge to a location that is warmer or has higher humidity, leave the cartridge in the new location for 2 hours or longer without opening the protective bag to allow it to adjust to the new temperature.
- Be sure to use new toner cartridges before the expiration date indicated on the package.
- Keep the toner cartridge away from products that generate magnetic waves, such as a display or computer.

## **Storing Toner Cartridges**

Be careful of the following points when storing a new toner cartridge or handling a toner cartridge that has been taken out of the printer for maintenance or moving the printer.



#### **IMPORTANT**

- Do not take a new toner cartridge out of the protective bag until it is ready to be used.
- When you take the toner cartridge out of the printer for servicing the printer or other purposes, place the toner cartridge into the original protective bag, or wrap it with a thick cloth immediately.
- Do not place it vertically or upside-down. Store the toner cartridge in the same orientation as when installed in the printer.
- Do not store the toner cartridge in a place exposed to direct sunlight.
- Do not store cartridges in a hot or humid place, or a place where the temperature and humidity can change significantly.
  - Storing environment temperature: 32 to 95°F (0 to 35°C)
  - Storing humidity range: 35 to 85 % RH (no condensation)
- Do not store the toner cartridge in a place where corrosive gases, such as ammonia, are generated, or where a considerable amount of salt is contained in the air, or where there is a lot of dust.
- Keep the toner cartridge out of the reach of small children.

#### ■ Condensation

Even within the storable humidity range, water droplets may develop both inside and outside of the toner cartridge due to the difference in temperature. The development of water droplets is called condensation. Condensation will adversely affect the quality of the toner cartridge.

## **Cleaning the Fixing Roller**

When the front or back of the printed paper has smudge marks, clean the fixing roller using the following procedure. Print quality deterioration can be prevented by cleaning the fixing roller.



#### **IMPORTANT**

- The cleaning paper cannot be printed on any paper other than A4/Letter. Be sure to use A4/Letter size paper.
- To print a cleaning paper, load a sheet of A4/Letter size paper in the multi-purpose tray.



**1** Make sure that the printer is online.

If the printer is not online, press [Online].



2 Press [Utility].





ОК

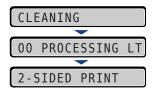
3 Select CLEANING using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].



<CLEANING> appears in the display, and the printer waits to print the cleaning paper.



## 4 Load a sheet of A4/Letter size paper in the multi-purpose tray, then press [Online].



The paper is fed into the printer slowly, and the printer starts cleaning the fixing roller.



Do not touch the paper until it is output to the output tray completely. The paper is first output partially after the front side is printed, and then it is fed again to be printed on the reverse side.



- · Cleaning takes approximately 25 seconds.
- The cleaning process cannot be canceled. Please wait until it is completed.

## **Adjusting the Printing Position**

If the printing position is skewed when printing from a certain paper source, you can adjust the position from the control panel.



### **IMPORTANT**

If any part of the print image lies outside the printable area after adjusting the printing position, the part will be missing in the print result.



### NOTE

Be aware that, when adjusting the printing position for 2-sided printing, the orientation of the images on the reverse pages varies depending on the printing orientation or setting for BIND.LOCATION.

## **Checking the Printing Position**

Perform the Printing Position Adjustment Print and check the position and direction to be adjusted.



#### **IMPORTANT**

When adjusting the printing position for 2-sided printing, set 2-SIDED PRINT. (See p. 6-30) to ON previously.



1 Press [Feeder Selection].







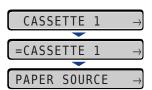






Select the paper source that you want to check the printing position using [◄] and [▶], then press [OK].

When adjusting the printing position for 2-sided printing, select the desired paper source.





Press [Online].





Make sure that the printer is online.

If the printer is not online, press [Online].



Press [Utility].

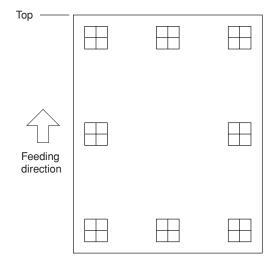




Select PRNTPOSNPRINT using [ ◀] and [▶], then press [OK].



The Printing Position Adjustment Print is printed as shown in the following. The top of the output paper is the top of the Printing Position Adjustment Print.



Next, check the printout results and specify the direction and position to be adjusted in "Adjusting the Printing Position" (See the next item).

## **Adjusting the Printing Position**

Next, check the printout results of the Printing Position Adjustment Print and specify the direction and position to be adjusted.

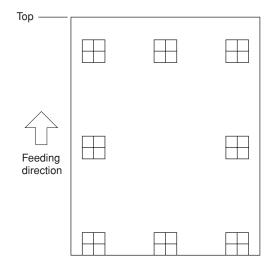
The measurements of "H" printed on paper are as the following:



\* 0.20 in. (5 mm) from each edge of paper

This section describes the setting procedure for the following Printing Position Adjustment Print printed with Cassette 1 specified, as an example.

In this case, adjust the printing position by -0.20 in. upward.



IMPORTANT

OFFSET Y (DUP.) and OFFSET X (DUP.) allow you to specify the printing position of the first page of 2-sided printing. The second page of 2-sided printing follows the settings for each paper source.



The printing position can be adjusted within a range from +0.20 to -0.20 in. in the vertical direction (Y) and from +0.09 to -0.09 in. in the horizontal direction (X).



1 Press [Online].

The Online indicator goes off, allowing you to specify the settings on the control panel.



**2** Press [Settings].





3 Select USER MAIN. using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].



The item for USER MAIN. is displayed.



Select ADJ.START POS. using [ ◄] and [►], then press [OK].



The item for the printing position is displayed.



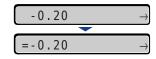
5 Select the paper source that you want to check the printing position using [◄] and [▶], then press [OK].





Specify the target numeric value using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].

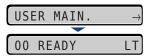
Next, check the printout results of the Printing Position Adjustment Print and select the numerical value to adjust the position.



"=" is displayed on the left of the value, and the printing position is specified.



**7** Press [Online].





**8** Press [Online] to place the printer online.



**9** Press [Utility].





## 10 Select PRNTPOSNPRINT using [ ◀] and [▶], then press [OK].



The printing position adjustment print in which the setting is changed is printed. Check the printout results to confirm the printing position.

To make further adjustment, repeat Step 1 to 10.

## Cleaning the Outside of the Printer

Periodically clean the outer surfaces and ventilation slots of the printer to maintain the optimal printing quality. When cleaning the printer, be careful of the following points in order to prevent an electrical shock or printer malfunctions.



### WARNING

- · When cleaning the printer, turn OFF the main power switch, and then unplug the power plug. Failure to observe these steps may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- · Do not use alcohol, benzene, paint thinner, or other flammable substances. If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the printer, it may result in a fire or electrical shock.



### (III) IMPORTANT

- Be careful not to use a cleaning agent other than water or a mild detergent diluted with water, as this may deform or crack the plastic materials in the printer.
- When using a mild detergent, be sure to dilute it with water.
- Grease or oil does not have to be applied to this printer. Be sure not to apply grease or oil.

## 1 Perform the following procedure.

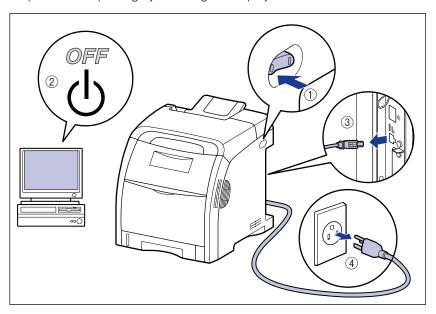
Turn the printer OFF ①.

If a USB cable is connected, turn the computer off 2, and then disconnect the USB cable 3.

Disconnect the power plug from the AC power outlet 4.

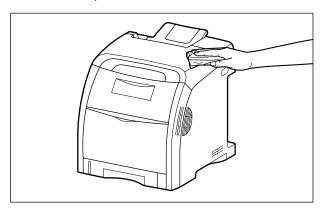
If you are using a hard disk, turn the printer OFF after performing a shutdown using the RESET menu.

If you are not using a hard disk, make sure that the Job indicator is off and that the printer is not printing by checking the display.



# 2 Firmly wring a soft cloth dampened with water or a mild detergent diluted with water, and wipe off the dirt.

If you use a mild detergent for cleaning, be sure to wipe away the detergent with a soft cloth dampened with water.



- 3 After wiping off the dirt, wipe the printer with a dry cloth.
- 4 When the printer is completely dry, plug the power plug into the AC power outlet, and then connect the USB cable.

## **Moving the Printer**

When changing the location of the printer or moving the printer for maintenance, be sure to perform the following procedure.



### A CAUTION

Do not carry the printer with the paper cassette attached. If you do so, the paper cassette may drop resulting in personal injury.



### **IMPORTANT**

Make sure that the front cover and multi-purpose tray are closed before carrying the printer.



### NOTE

For details on the installation site, see "Installation Site," on p. 2-3.

## 1 Perform the following procedure.

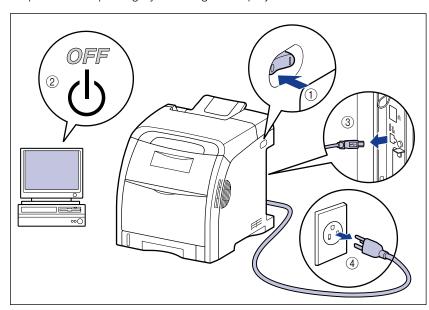
Turn the printer OFF (1).

If a USB cable is connected, turn the computer off ②, and then disconnect the USB cable ③.

Disconnect the power plug from the AC power outlet (4).

If you are using a hard disk, turn the printer OFF after performing a shutdown using the RESET menu.

If you are not using a hard disk, make sure that the Job indicator is off and that the printer is not printing by checking the display.

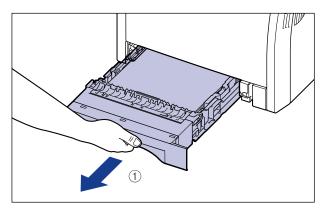


## **MARNING**

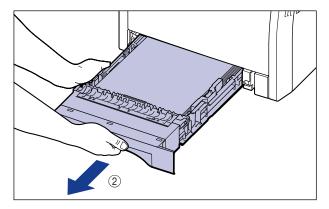
Be sure to turn the printer and computer OFF, unplug the power plug, and then disconnect all the interface cables from the printer before moving the printer. Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.

- 2 Remove all the interface cables and the power cord from the printer.
- Pull out the paper cassette.

Pull out the paper cassette gently 1.

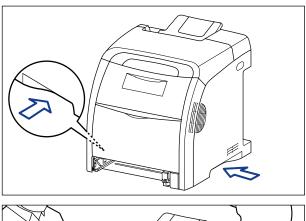


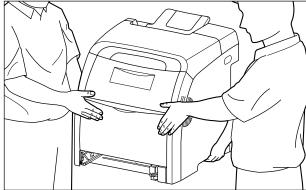
While holding the paper cassette with both hands, remove it from the printer unit as shown in the figure 2.



## Move the printer unit from the installation site.

Carry the printer with 2 or more people by holding the center of the lift handles on the lower portion of the printer and lifting it up at the same time.



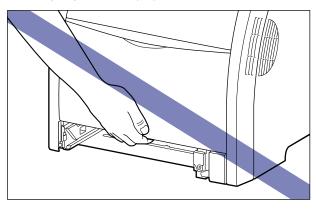


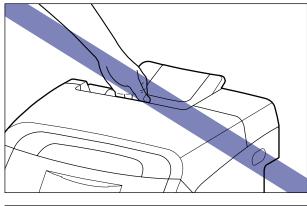


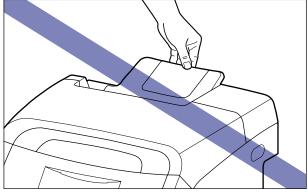
#### **A** CAUTION

• This printer weighs approximately 56.9 lb (25.8 kg) without the paper cassette installed. The printer must be carried by 2 or more people, and care must be taken to avoid hurting your back or other portions of your body when carrying the printer.

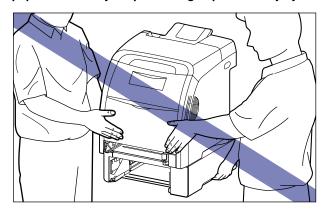
• Be sure not to hold the printer by the front panel, output area, or any portions other than the lift handles. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injury.







• Do not carry the printer with the paper feeder installed. If you do so, the paper feeder may drop resulting in personal injury.





If the optional paper feeder was previously installed in the printer, place the paper feeder on the new installation site before carrying the printer to the site. For details on the procedure for installing the paper feeder, see "Removing the Packing Materials and Installing the Paper Feeder," on p. 9-8.

5 Put the printer down carefully at the new installation site.



#### **A** CAUTION

Put the printer down slowly and carefully. Be careful not to hurt your hands.

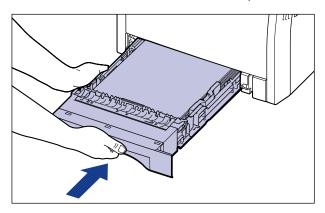


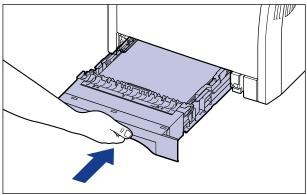
#### (IMPORTANT

Secure sufficient space around the printer at the installation site so that you can install the optional accessories and connect cables.

# 6 Set the paper cassette in the printer.

Push the paper cassette into the printer firmly until the front side of the paper cassette is flush with the front surface of the printer.





#### **A** CAUTION

When setting the paper cassette in the printer, be careful not to catch your fingers.

- 7 Connect the interface cables except for the USB cable, and connect the power cord.
- 8 Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.
- 9 Connect the USB cable.

#### Transporting the Printer

When transporting the printer for reasons such as relocating, remove the toner cartridges and store the printer and the parts in the package that they came in with the packing materials attached in order to prevent them from being damaged while being transported.

If the original package and packing materials are not available, find an appropriate box and packing materials and pack the printer and the parts appropriately.

# **Handling the Printer**

This printer consists of various electronic and precise optical parts. Read the following section so that you can handle the printer properly.



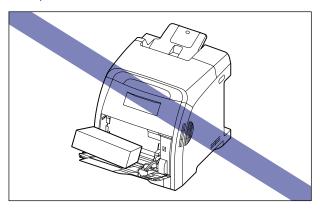
#### A CAUTION

If an error should occurred to the hard disk in the printer unit, the received, recorded, and saved data may be deleted. It is recommended not to record or save important data on the hard disk. Canon assumes no responsibility whatsoever for any damages or losses arising from data loss by the customers.



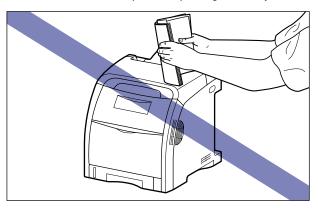
#### **IMPORTANT**

- For details on how to handle the printer, also read "Important Safety Instructions" (See p. xvii).
- Make sure that the multi-purpose tray is closed before opening the front cover. If you open the front cover with the multi-purpose tray opened, this may result in damage to the printer.
- Do not place any heavy objects on the printer, trays, or covers. This may result in damage to the printer.



 Do not leave any cover open longer than required. Exposing the printer to direct sunlight or strong light may result in deterioration in print quality.

• Avoid vibration while the printer is printing. This may result in deterioration in print quality.



- Be sure not to open the covers on the printer during printing. This may result in damage to the printer.
- Handle each cover gently when opening or closing it. Failure to do so may result in damage to the printer.
- If you want to spread a blanket on the printer to prevent dust from entering the printer, turn the power OFF and allow the printer to cool down sufficiently before covering the printer.
- If you do not plan to use the printer for a long period of time, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.
- Do not use or store the printer in a room where chemicals are used.

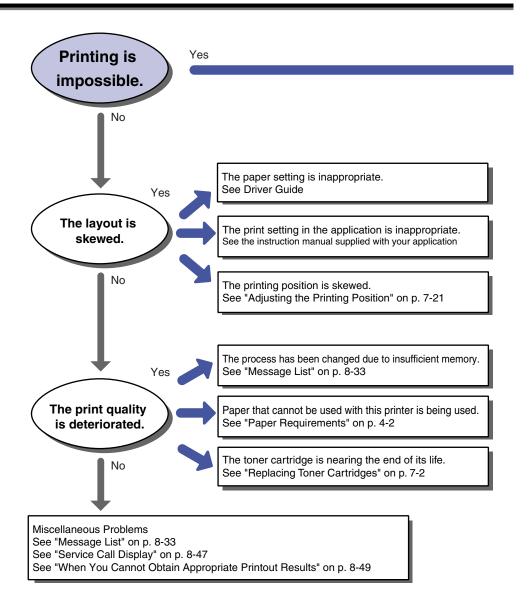
# **Troubleshooting**

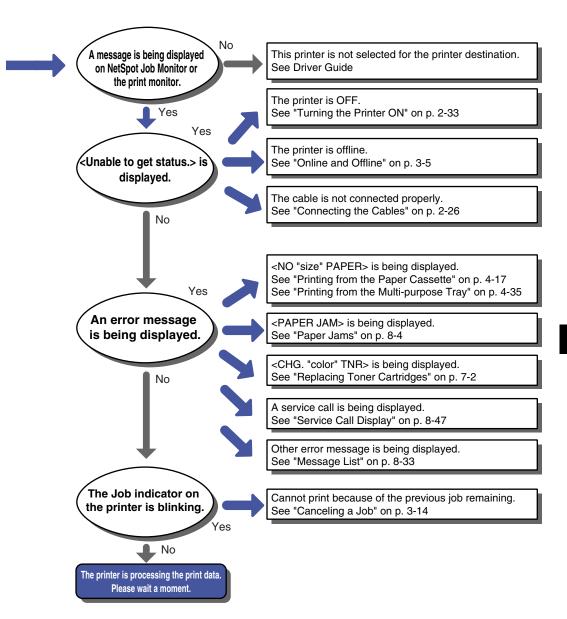


This chapter describes the remedies for problems such as a paper jam or an error message appearing.

When You Have Trouble Printing	8-2
Paper Jams	
Paper Jam Area	
Procedure for Clearing Paper Jams	
When the Message that Indicates a Paper Jam Does Not Disappear	
When the Duplex Unit Is Not Installed Properly	
Message List	
When You Cannot Obtain Appropriate Printout Results	
Problems with the Power or Printer Operation	
Problems with the Printout Results	
Print Quality Problems	
Adjusting the Color Balance	8-66

# When You Have Trouble Printing





# **Paper Jams**

When a paper jam occurs during printing for some reason, the printer beeps, displaying the message <13 PAPER JAM> in the display. When a paper jam occurs, remove the jammed paper using the following procedure, and then resume the job. If the message that indicates the paper jam does not disappear even after removing the jammed paper following the procedure, there is a possibility that torn pieces of paper are still left inside the printer. Inspect each part of the printer again, and completely remove all pieces of jammed paper.

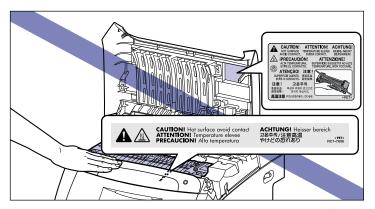


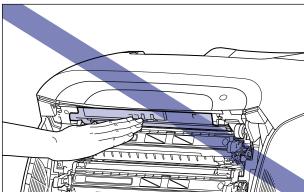
#### **A** WARNING

There are some areas inside the printer which are subject to high-voltages. When removing jammed paper or when inspecting the inside of the printer, do not allow necklaces, bracelets, or other metal objects to touch the inside of the printer, as this may result in burns or electrical shock.



 The fixing unit and its surroundings inside the printer are hot during use. Make sure the fixing unit is completely cool before removing the jammed paper.
 Touching the fixing unit when it is still hot may result in burns.

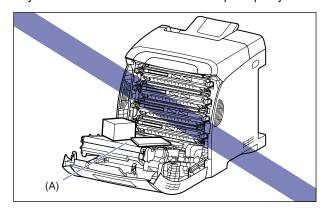


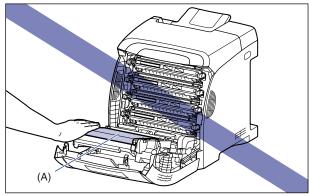


- When removing jammed paper, take care not to allow the toner to come into contact with your hands or clothing, as this will dirty your hands or clothing. If they become dirty, wash them immediately with cold water. Washing with warm water will set the toner and make it impossible to remove the toner stains.
- When removing paper jammed inside the printer, remove the jammed paper gently to prevent the toner on the paper from scattering and getting into your eyes or mouth. If the toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and immediately consult a physician.
- When removing jammed paper, take care not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.
- Keep your hands or clothing away from the roller in the output area after removing jammed paper completely. Even if the printer is not printing, sudden rotation of the roller may catch your hands or clothing, resulting in personal injury.

#### **IMPORTANT**

- Remove jammed paper while the power of the printer is ON. If the power is turned OFF, the data being printed will be deleted. When you remove the fixing unit to remove jammed paper, however, the data being printed will be deleted because you have to turn the printer OFF.
- Applying excess force may result in tearing paper or damaging the parts in the printer. When removing jammed paper, pull out the paper in the most appropriate direction, judging from the position of the paper.
- If paper is torn, be sure to find and remove any remaining pieces of paper.
- Do not place any object on or touch the transfer belt (A) of the ETB unit. The transfer belt of the ETB unit is supplied with a function that cleans itself, therefore, do not clean the belt even when the toner is on it. If the ETB unit is broken or transfer belt is damaged, this may result in misfeeds or deterioration in print quality.

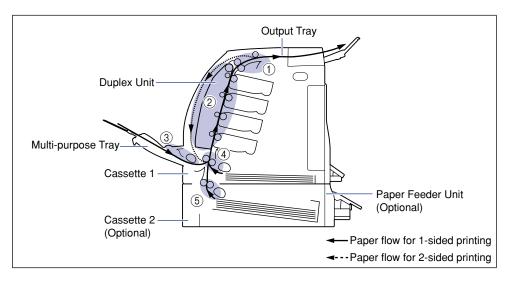




8-6

# Paper Jam Area

The message that appears in the display shows the location where the paper jam occurred.



	Paper Jam Area	Displayed Message
1	Inside the top cover, Output tray	<top area="" cover=""></top>
2	Inside the front cover, Duplex print transport area	<front cover=""></front>
3	Multi-purpose tray	<tray area=""></tray>
4	Cassette 1	<cass.1 area=""></cass.1>
(5)	Cassette 2 (only when the paper feeder is installed)	<cass.2 area=""></cass.2>

## **Procedure for Clearing Paper Jams**

Remove the jammed paper using the following procedure.



#### **IMPORTANT**

The error message may remain if jammed paper is removed without opening the front cover or top cover. In this case, open and close the front cover or top cover once.

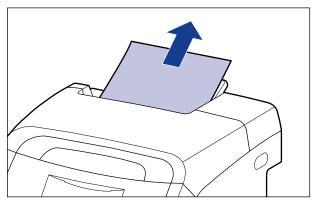
#### Confirm all the messages that appear in the display.

Messages appear one at a time. Confirm all of them.

As the messages disappear when the cover is open, take a note of them if required.



## Check the output tray and remove any jammed paper.



#### IMPORTANT

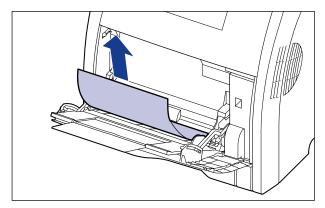
If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily, do not try to remove it forcefully but proceed to the next step.



#### ∧ NOTE

If unfixed toner is on the removed paper, it may adhere to the paper to be printed next.

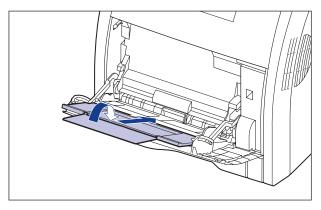
#### If you are using the multi-purpose tray, remove any paper jammed in the multi-purpose tray.

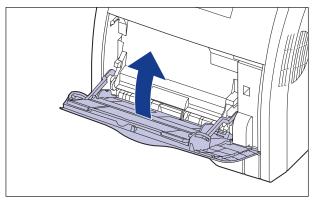


#### IMPORTANT

If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily, do not try to remove it forcefully but proceed to the next step.

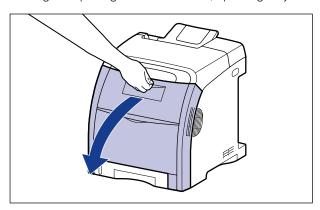
# If you are using the multi-purpose tray, close it.





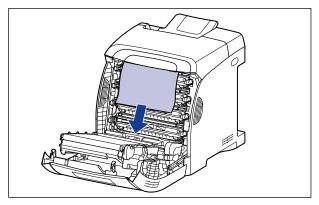
## Open the front cover.

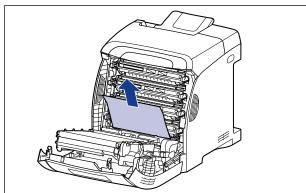
Holding the opening of the front cover, open it gently.

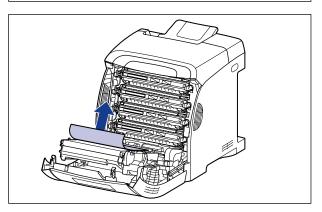


# 6 Remove any jammed paper by pulling it in the direction of the arrow.

Remove the jammed paper in the direction of the arrow gently to prevent unfixed toner from spilling. Remove the paper, being careful not to touch the transfer belt of the ETB unit or toner cartridge.







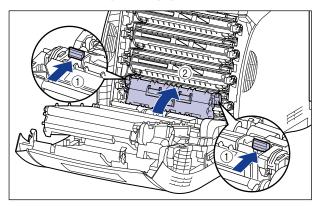
#### **IMPORTANT**

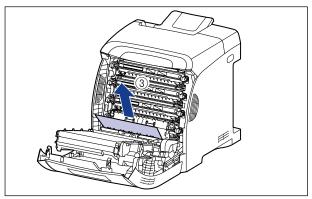
If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily, do not try to remove it forcefully but proceed to the next step.

#### If a paper jam occurs when performing 2-sided printing, perform the following procedure.

If you are not performing 2-sided printing, proceed to the next step.

☐ Press the lock release buttons on the duplex print transport guide ①, raise it 2), and remove the jammed paper 3).



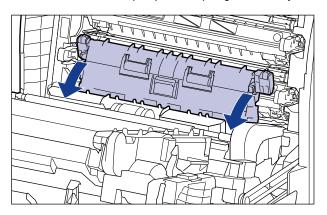


#### IMPORTANT

If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily, do not try to remove it forcefully but proceed to the next step.

 $oldsymbol{\square}$  Close the duplex print transport guide.

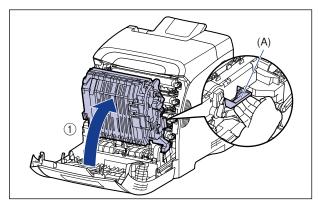
Close both sides of the duplex print transport guide securely.

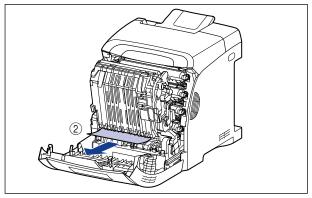


#### IMPORTANT

Be sure to check if the duplex print transport guide is closed completely. If the duplex print transport guide is not closed completely, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.

 $oldsymbol{\Box}$  While raising the tab (A) of the duplex unit with your right hand  $oldsymbol{\bigcirc}$ , pull out the jammed paper in the direction of the arrow to remove the paper ② as shown in the figure.



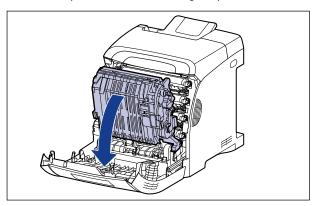




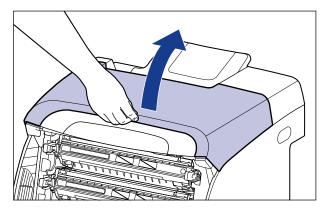
#### **⊘** NOTE

If the duplex unit comes off, see "When the Duplex Unit Is Not Installed Properly," on p. 8-27.

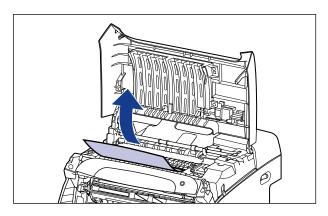
 $\ \square$  Move the duplex unit back to its original position.



# 8 Open the top cover.



#### Remove any jammed paper by pulling it in the direction of the arrow.

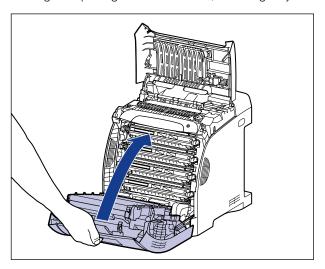


#### IMPORTANT

If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily, do not try to remove it forcefully but proceed to the next step.

#### 10 Close the front cover.

Holding the opening of the front cover, close it gently.

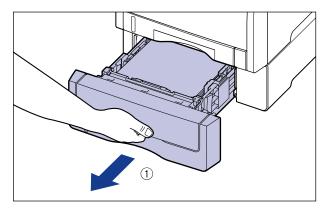


#### **A** CAUTION

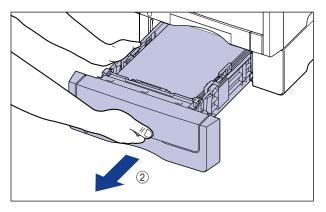
When closing the front cover, be careful not to catch your fingers.

- 11 Perform the following procedure with the top cover open. Be careful so that the top cover does not close.
- 12 If the optional paper feeder is installed, pull out the paper cassette of the paper feeder.

Pull out the paper cassette gently (1).

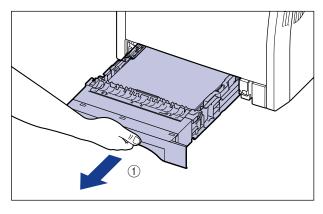


While holding the paper cassette with both hands, remove it from the paper feeder as shown in the figure 2.

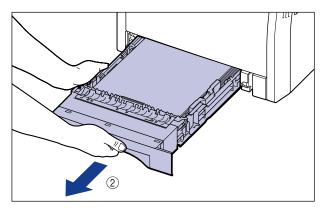


# 13 Pull out the paper cassette of the printer.

Pull out the paper cassette gently ①.

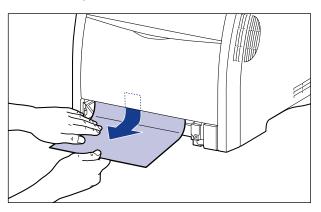


While holding the paper cassette with both hands, remove it from the printer unit as shown in the figure 2.

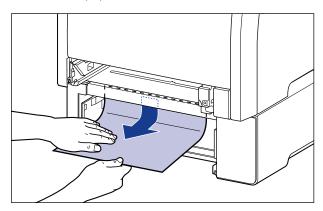


#### 14 Remove any jammed paper while pushing it downward to some extent.

In case of the printer unit

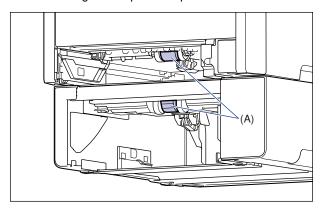


#### In case of the paper feeder



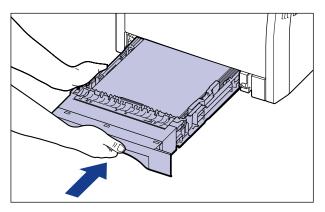
#### IMPORTANT

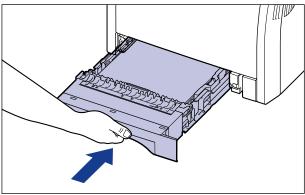
- If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily, do not try to remove it forcefully but open the front cover, and then see Step 6 and remove the jammed paper. If you try to remove the jammed paper forcefully, the feed roller may come off.
- Do not touch the feed rollers (A) in the printer unit and paper feeder. This may result in damage to the printer or printer error.



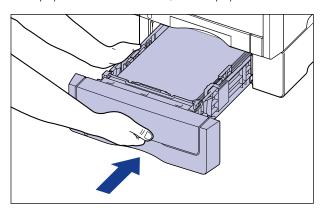
# 15 Set the paper cassette in the printer.

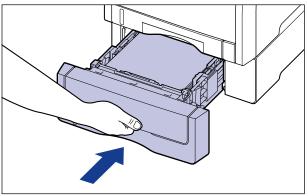
Push the paper cassette into the printer firmly until the front side of the paper cassette is flush with the front surface of the printer.





If the paper feeder is installed, set the paper cassette of the paper feeder also.

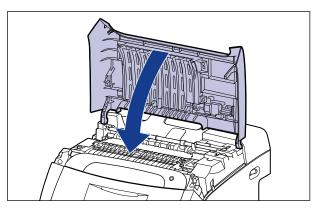




#### CAUTION

When setting the paper cassette in the printer, be careful not to catch your fingers.

# **16** Close the top cover.



When the message that indicates a paper jam occurring inside the top cover remains in the Printer Status Window even after the top cover is closed, the jammed paper may still remain in the fixing unit. Remove the jammed paper following the procedure in "When the Message that Indicates a Paper Jam Does Not Disappear" (See p. 8-22).

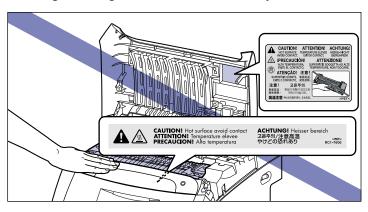
## When the Message that Indicates a Paper Jam Does Not Disappear

When the message that indicates a paper jam occurring inside the top cover is displayed even after the jammed paper is removed and the display of the Printer Status Window is refreshed, this indicates that the jammed paper still remains in the fixing unit. Remove the fixing unit using the following procedure to remove the jammed paper.



#### CAUTION

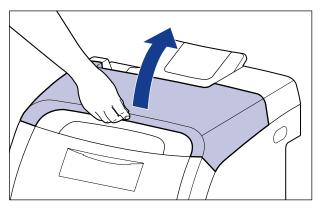
The fixing unit and its surroundings inside the printer are hot during use. Make sure the fixing unit is completely cool before removing the jammed paper. Touching the fixing unit when it is still hot may result in burns.



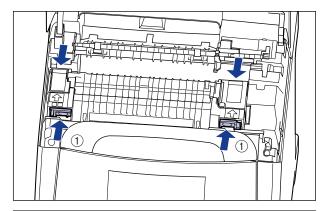
#### **IMPORTANT**

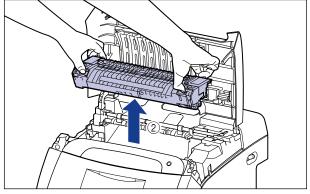
When you remove the fixing unit, the data being printed will be deleted because you have to turn the power of the printer OFF. Print the data again after removing the jammed paper.

- 1 Turn the power of the printer OFF.
- **2** Open the top cover.



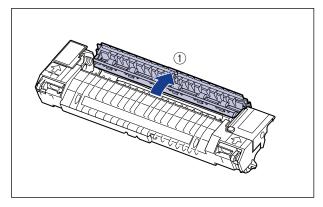
**3** While holding the fixing unit by the arrowed portions ①, remove it gently as shown in the figure 2.

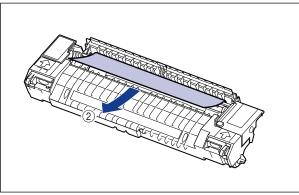




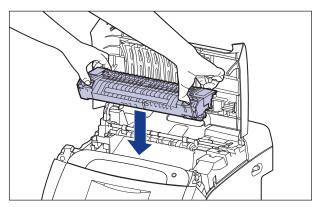
# 4 Open the cover of the fixing unit ①, pull out the jammed paper in the direction of the arrow to remove the paper ② as shown in the figure.

Remove the jammed paper in the direction of the arrow gently to prevent unfixed toner from spilling.

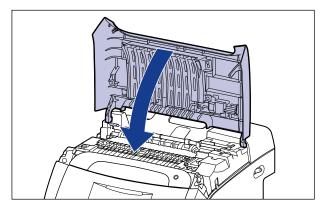




# Install the fixing unit.



# 6 Close the top cover.



Turn the printer ON.

# When the Duplex Unit Is Not Installed Properly

If the duplex unit supplied with this printer is not installed properly, the message <0F OPT.CONN.ERR.> appears in the display.

Install the duplex unit properly using the following procedure.



#### **IMPORTANT**

To install the duplex unit properly, remove it once. When you remove the duplex unit, the data being printed will be deleted because you have to turn the power of the printer OFF. Print the data again after installing the duplex unit properly.

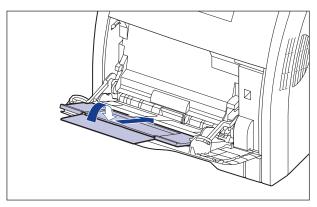


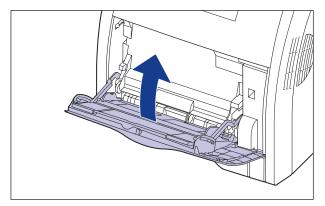
#### Turn the power of the printer OFF.

If you are using a hard disk, turn the printer OFF after performing a shutdown using the RESET menu.

If you are not using a hard disk, make sure that the Job indicator is off and that the printer is not printing by checking the display.

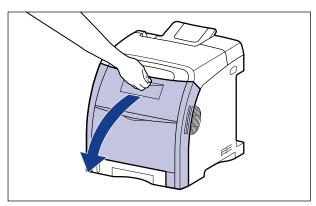
# 2 If you are using the multi-purpose tray, close it.





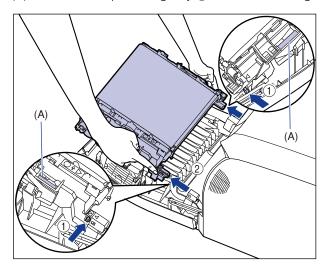
### Open the front cover.

Holding the opening of the front cover, open it gently.



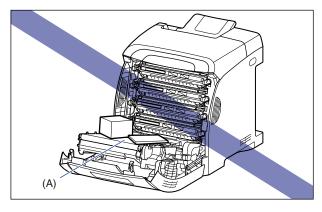
### Remove the duplex unit gently.

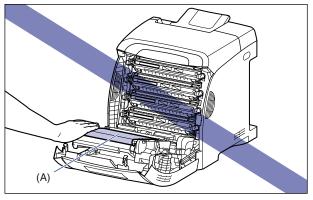
While pressing the levers on both sides of the duplex unit ① and holding the tabs (A), remove the duplex unit gently ② as shown in the figure.



### MPORTANT

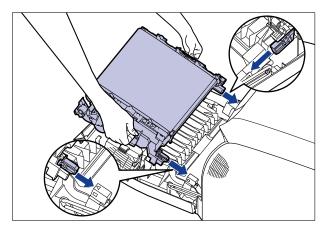
Do not place any object on or touch the transfer belt (A) of the ETB unit. The transfer belt of the ETB unit is supplied with a function that cleans itself, therefore, do not clean the belt even when the toner is on it. If the ETB unit is broken or transfer belt is damaged, this may result in misfeeds or deterioration in print quality.



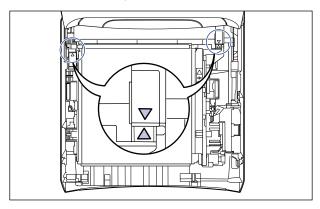


## Install the duplex unit.

Insert the projections of the duplex unit in the printer, then install the duplex unit firmly until it clicks as shown in the figure.

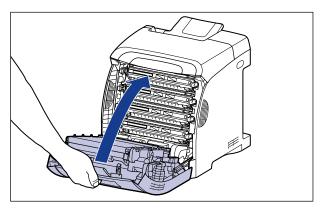


Make sure that the triangular mark on the printer is aligned with that on the duplex unit as shown in the figure.



## Close the front cover.

Holding the opening of the front cover, close it gently.





When closing the front cover, be careful not to catch your fingers.

## **Message List**

When the printer cannot continue printing for some reason (an error status), the printer beeps, the Message indicator comes on, and an error message that indicates the description of the error appears in the display. A Warning message appears in the display when the printer requires some remedy (a warning status) although the job is not affected.

If either of these messages appears, perform the following procedures according to the message.



#### NOTE

- When multiple warnings are occurring at the same time, the Warning messages appear by rotation.
- When the printer is in error status and warning status at the same time, the Warning message does not appear.
- Even when a message with (Warning Message) appears (when the printer is in a warning status), the printer does not stop printing.
- For a message with the <Auto Error Skip> mark, you can skip the error by pressing [Online] and continue printing. However, part of the print data may be missing or it may not be printed properly. When you want to stop the process, perform a soft reset to eliminate the cause of the error, press [Online], and then print again. Also, you can automatically skip the errors to which this mark is attached by setting AUTO ERROR SKIP in the SETUP menu to ON.

#### <E nnn-nnnn> ("n" represents a number)

Cause

A problem has occurred inside the printer.

Remedy

Solve the problem following the instructions in "Service Call Display" (See p. 8-47).

#### <02 COOLING>

Cause 1

The temperature of the fixing unit exceeded a fixed value after printing (especially paper with a narrower width) continuously.

Remedy

Please wait a moment. The printer cools down the fixing unit automatically. It resumes the job after finishing the cool down process.

Cause 2 When printing after the paper is changed from narrower one to wider one, the printer cools down the fixing unit so that the print quality is maintained.

Remedy Please wait a moment. The printer cools down the fixing unit automatically. If the message appears in the middle of printing, the printer resumes the job after finishing the cool down process. If the message appeared after the job, the message disappears and the printer stops operation after the cool down process, and the printer becomes ready to print.

#### <0F OPT.CONN.ERR.>

Cause The duplex unit is not installed properly.

Remedy Turn the power OFF, install the duplex unit properly, and then turn it ON again. (See "When the Duplex Unit Is Not Installed Properly," on p. 8-27)

#### <11 NO "size" PAPER>

Cause Paper of the size specified in the application is not loaded in the paper source (in all the paper sources when PAPER SOURCE is set to AUTO; in the specified paper source when the setting is fixed).

Remedy 1 Refill or load paper.

Remedy 2 Press [Feeder Selection], then select other paper source for the same paper size or larger paper size. (See "Selecting a Paper Source," on p. 4-13)

#### <12 COVER OPEN>

Cause The front cover or top cover is open.

Remedy Close the front cover or top cover firmly. If the printer is not online, press [Online].

#### <13 PAPER JAM>

Cause Paper is jammed inside the printer

Remedy Remove the jammed paper and set the paper cassette and covers to the original position. If the printer is not online, press [Online]. (See "Paper Jams," on p. 8-4)

### **IMPORTANT**

- If paper jams have occurred at multiple areas at the same time, the areas appear in the display by rotation.
- If you have removed the jammed paper without opening any cover, be sure to open and close the front cover or top cover once, and then press [Online].

#### <14 NO "color" CART>

Cause The toner cartridge of Y (Yellow), M (Magenta), C (Cyan), or K (Black) is not installed.

Remedy Install the toner cartridge of the indicated color. (See "Replacing Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-2)

#### <16 "color" SET ERR>

Cause The toner cartridge of Y (Yellow), M (Magenta), C (Cyan), or K (Black) is not installed properly.

Remedy Install the toner cartridge of the indicated color properly. (See "Replacing Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-2)

#### <16 PREP."color" TNR>

(Warning Message)

Cause The toner cartridge of K (Black), Y (Yellow), M (Magenta), or C (Cyan) is nearing the end of its life.

Remedy Although you can continue to print for a while, have ready a new toner cartridge. Replace the toner cartridge of the indicated color with a new one before printing a large amount of data. (See "Replacing Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-2)

#### <16 CHG. "color" TNR>

Cause The toner cartridge of K (Black), Y (Yellow), M (Magenta), or C (Cyan) has reached the end of its life.

Remedy Press [Online]. Although you can continue to print for a while, have ready a new toner cartridge. Replace the toner cartridge of the indicated color with a new one before printing a large amount of data. (See "Replacing Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-2)

#### <18 FEED ERROR>

Cause Paper of the size or type that cannot be fed from the multi-purpose tray or paper cassettes is specified.

Remedy 1 If a paper source is specified, press [Feeder Selection], then set PAPER SOURCE to AUTO.

Remedy 2 Press [Feeder Selection], select a paper source from which paper of the specified size or type can be fed, then load paper.

Remedy 3 Specify the settings for STD PAPER SIZE and STD PAPER TYPE in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu to the size or type of paper that can be loaded in the paper source.

Remedy 4 Press [Online], then print from the currently selected paper source. However, this may result in deterioration in print quality.

#### <18 NO CASSETTE 1>

Cause Cassette 1 is not set.

Remedy Set Cassette 1. (See "Printing from the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-17)

#### <1F OUTPUT FULL>

Cause The output tray is filled to the limit.

Remedy Remove the paper in the output tray.

#### <1G CHG."color" TNR>

Cause The toner cartridge of K (Black), Y (Yellow), M (Magenta), or C (Cyan) has reached the end of its life.

Remedy Replace the toner cartridge of the indicated color with a new one. (See "Replacing Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-2)

#### <1H CHK "color" CONN>

Cause There is a possibility that the toner cartridge of Y (Yellow), M (Magenta), C (Cyan), or K (Black) is not installed properly.

Remedy 1 Remove the toner cartridge of the indicated color, then install it properly.

Remedy 2 If the message appears and there is a problem with the print quality even after applying the Remedy 1, it is recommended that you remove the toner cartridge and replace it with a new one. (See "Replacing Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-2)

#### <23 DOWN.MEM.FULL>

<Auto Error Skip>

Cause The memory for registering macro and custom characters has run out and overflowed.

Remedy 1 The printer continues printing by pressing [Online]. However, the overflowed data cannot be registered.

#### Remedy 2 Perform a soft reset using the RESET menu, increase the free space of RAM using the following procedure, register the data again, and then print again.

- Perform a hard reset or cycle the power of the printer (Be aware that all the data in the memory will be deleted).
- Install an optional expansion RAM module. (See "Installing RAM," on p. 9-15)

#### <26 SYS.MEM.FULL>

<Auto Error Skip>

#### Cause

The work memory required for the printer process has run out while the system is processing the data (mainly the graphics data and text data).

Remedy 1 The printer continues printing by pressing [Online]. However, the data with which an error has occurred is not printed properly.

Remedy 2 Perform a soft reset using the RESET menu, and then increase the free space of RAM using the following procedure.

- Perform a hard reset or cycle the power of the printer (Be aware that all the data in the memory will be deleted).
- Install an optional expansion RAM module. (See "Installing RAM," on p. 9-15)

#### <27 JOB START ERR>

<Auto Error Skip>

Cause

The specified emulation does not exist.

Remedy

Press [Online] to continue printing from the next data. However, the data with which an error has occurred is not printed.

#### <30 MEMORY FULL>

<Auto Error Skip>

Cause 1 The work memory has run out while the system is processing the data.

Remedy

The printer continues printing by pressing [Online]. However, the data with which an error has occurred may not be printed properly.

Cause 2

(If this error has occurred while the printer is ON) The amount of memory specified in NVRAM could not be secured because the memory construction had been changed (The expansion RAM is removed).

Remedy 1

The printer continues printing by pressing [Online]. However, the data may not be printed properly due to the change of the memory construction.



#### **IMPORTANT**

The memory construction of NVRAM is rewrote to a securable value when <30 MEMORY FULL> appears. (\* The settings for RIP Once and the hard disk is restored to the default value.) (See "SETUP Menu Settings," on p. 6-13)

Remedy 2 After turning the printer OFF, restore the memory to the original condition (install the removed RAM), and then print again. (See "Installing RAM," on p. 9-15)

Remedy 3 Set EXT.RX BUFFER (See p. 6-51) in the INTERFACE MENU options in the SETUP menu to OFF, and then print again.

#### <32 2-SIDED ERROR>

<Auto Error Skip>

Cause The printer received 2-sided printing data of paper sizes (including the orientation) or paper types unavailable for automatic 2-sided printing.

Remedy 1 The printer continues printing by pressing [Online]. However, the data on each side is printed on two pages.

Remedy 2 After performing a soft reset in the RESET menu, change the setting to a paper size or type available for automatic 2-sided printing, and then print again.

#### <33 WORK MEM.FULL>

<Auto Error Skip>

Cause The work memory for each operation mode cannot be secured.

Remedy 1 The printer continues printing by pressing [Online]. However, the data with which an error has occurred is not printed properly.



### **IMPORTANT**

When you continue printing by pressing [Online], be aware that the data of macro that is already registered may be deleted.

Remedy 2 Perform a soft reset in the RESET menu, increase the free space of RAM using the following procedure, and then print again.

- Perform a hard reset or cycle the power of the printer (Be aware that all the data in the memory that the printer has received will be deleted).
- If you are using UFR II Printer Driver, install an optional expansion RAM module. However, the problem may not be solved even after the expansion RAM module is installed. (See "Installing RAM," on p. 9-15)

#### <35 TABLE FULL>

<Auto Error Skip>

Cause The number of the documents in a job has exceeded 16.

Remedy The printer continues printing by pressing [Online]. However, the job with which an error has occurred is not printed.

Cause 1 An unavailable paper type is selected.

- Remedy 1 The printer continues printing by pressing [Online]. However, printing is continued with the paper type assumed to be plain paper. If the type of paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray or paper cassette is not plain paper, you cannot obtain appropriate printout results.
- Remedy 2 Set the paper type to the appropriate one in TRAY PAPER TYPE (See p. 6-27) or CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2) (See p. 6-29), then print again.
- Cause 2 Color printing was performed on transparencies (Transparencies can be printed only in black and white).
- Remedy Set the color mode to "Black and White", then print in black and white.

#### <38 LOW IMGE QLTY>

<Auto Error Skip>

- Cause The printer cannot process the data because it is too complicated.
- Remedy 1 The printer continues printing by pressing [Online]. In this case, the printer prints with the image quality level being lowered.
- Remedy 2 Perform a soft reset in the RESET menu, set GRADATION LEVEL (See p. 6-35) in the QUALITY MENU options in the SETUP menu to HIGH 1, and then print again.
- Remedy 3 If you want to print without the image quality level being lowered, install an optional expansion RAM module, and then print again. (See "Installing RAM." on p. 9-15)

#### <39 SPL MEM.FULL>

<Auto Error Skip>

- Cause Because spool memory has run out, the printer cannot print.
- Remedy 1 The printer continues printing by pressing [Online]. However, the page with which an error has occurred is not printed.
- Remedy 2 Perform a soft reset in the RESET menu, specify the paper size smaller, and then print again.
- Remedy 3 Perform a soft reset in the RESET menu, set GRADATION LEVEL (See p. 6-35) in the QUALITY MENU options in the SETUP menu to HIGH 1, and then print again.
- Remedy 4 If 2-SIDED PRINT. in the FEEDER MENU options in the SETUP menu is set to ON, specify OFF, and then print again.

- Remedy 5 Change the setting for HALFTONES (See p. 6-38) in the QUALITY MENU options in the SETUP menu, and then print again.
- Remedy 6 Install an optional expansion RAM module, then print again. (See "Installing RAM," on p. 9-15)

#### <41 CHK PAPER SZE>

- Cause 1 The size of the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray or paper cassette is different from the setting for TRAY PAPER SIZE or CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) specified from the computer or control panel.
- Remedy Match the size specified in TRAY PAPER SIZE (See p. 6-22) or CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) (See p. 6-23) and the size of the loaded paper, and then press [Online].
- Cause 2 You are using UFR II Printer Driver, and you loaded custom paper of its long edges 8.50 in. (215.9 mm) or less in portrait orientation and printed when TRAY PAPER SIZE or CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) was set to MIXED SIZES.
- Remedy Load the paper in landscape orientation, then print again.
- Cause 3 When UFR II Printer Driver was not used, custom size paper was loaded in landscape orientation to print.
- Remedy Load the paper in portrait orientation, then print again.
- Cause 4 SPECIAL MODE J in the USER MAIN. options in the SETUP is set to OFF.
- Remedy Set SPECIAL MODE J (See p. 6-52) to ON, then print again.

#### <52 RAST.MODE ERR>

<Auto Error Skip>

- Cause The printer received data in format that it does not support during printing in the Raster mode.
- Remedy 1 The printer continues printing by pressing [Online]. However, the data may not be printed properly.
- Remedy 2 Print again using a printer driver that supports image data formats.

#### <53 SEC.PRINT ERR>

<Auto Error Skip>

- Cause 1 Secured print data is sent from a printer driver that is not for LBP5360.
- Remedy Press [Online] to cancel the job.

- Cause 2 The printer received secured print data when the hard disk cannot be used. Remedy Press [Online] to cancel printing, set HARD DISK (See p. 6-19) in the
- CONTROL MENU options in the SETUP menu to ON, perform a hard reset, and then print again.
- Cause 3 The number of the jobs exceeded the amount of jobs the printer can save as secured print jobs (You can save up to 64 secured print jobs in the hard disk.)
- Remedy Press [Online] to cancel printing, delete any unnecessary secured print jobs, and then print again.
- Cause 4 The amount of the job data exceeded the amount of job data that you can save on the hard disk as secured print jobs (You can save the data in total of up to 4GB of secured print jobs, stored jobs, and paused jobs in the hard disk. However, when SECURED TYPE in the CONTROL MENU options is set to PDL, you can save only up to 1.88GB of data.
- Remedy Press [Online] to cancel printing, resume any paused jobs or delete unnecessary secured print jobs, and then print again.

#### <53 STORE ERROR>

<Auto Error Skip>

- Cause 1 The data for which a stored job print is specified is sent from a printer driver that is not for LBP5360.
- Remedy Press [Online] to cancel the job.
- Cause 2 The data cannot be saved on the hard disk because there is not sufficient free space in the hard disk.
- Remedy The printer is ready to print by pressing [Online], ignoring the print data.
- Cause 3 The number of the jobs exceeded the number of jobs you can save on the hard disk.
- Remedy 1 The printer is ready to print by pressing [Online], ignoring the print data.
- Remedy 2 Delete any unnecessary jobs from among the jobs saved on the hard disk.
- Cause 4 The amount of the print jobs exceeded the amount of jobs you can save on the hard disk.
- Remedy 1 The printer is ready to print by pressing [Online], ignoring the print data.
- Remedy 2 Delete any unnecessary jobs from among the jobs saved on the hard disk.

Cause An error has occurred in the hard disk.

Remedy 1 The printer reformats the hard disk automatically.

Remedy 2 The printer starts up with its settings not using the hard disk by pressing [Online]. However, you cannot print with the functions that require the hard disk.

Remedy 3 Contact your local authorized Canon dealer for servicing.

#### <56 HDD ERROR>

Cause An error has occurred in the hard disk.

Remedy Format the hard disk in HDD MAINTENANCE (See p. 6-54) in the USER MAIN. options in the SETUP menu. If the same error occurs, you need to replace the hard disk. Contact your local authorized Canon dealer for servicing.

#### <57 RIP ONCE ERR.>

<Auto Error Skip>

Cause 1 The printer cannot continue to print multiple copies using RIP Once because the hard disk has run out of free space.

Remedy 1 Divide the job into multiple jobs, then print again.

Remedy 2 Set RIP ONCE (See p. 6-21) in the CONTROL MENU options in the SETUP menu to OFF, and then perform a hard reset. (The functions of RIP Once become disabled.)

Remedy 3 A copy of the data is printed by pressing [Online].

Cause 2 The number of the copies that the printer can process exceeded when printing in the [Edit and Preview] mode.

Remedy 1 Print all the print jobs again using the printer driver for this printer.

Remedy 2 Reduce the number of the pages you print at a time and print again with the job divided into multiple jobs.

#### <58 JOB MEM.FULL>

<Auto Error Skip>

Cause There is not sufficient free RAM space to process jobs.

Remedy 1 If you are processing multiple jobs at once, press [Online] to cancel printing, wait for other jobs complete, and then print again.

Remedy 2 If the job data is too large, divide the job and print again.

Cause The printer received any unanalyzable data while it is receiving a job, or it timed out.

Remedy 1 Press [Online] to cancel printing, then print again.

Remedy 2 A problem may be occurring in the network you are using. Check the status of the network that you are using.

#### <60 KEY MNG.ERR.1>

Cause The file related to key management is broken.

Remedy Select the SETUP menu → the INTERFACE MENU options → NETWORK MENU  $\rightarrow$  REMOTE UI SET.  $\rightarrow$  SSL, and then make sure that OFF is specified. After that, restart the printer, and then regenerate the key and certificate and specify the settings for SSL from the Remote UI. After setting the key management and SSL, restart the printer again. (See Remote UI Guide "Chapter 3 Appendix")

#### <60 DECODE ERROR>

Cause The printer could not analyze encrypted secured print data.

Remedy Perform a soft reset using the RESET menu, then print again.

#### <9E CHK "color" LOC>

Cause The toner cartridge of Y (Yellow), M (Magenta), C (Cyan), or K (Black) is not installed in the appropriate position.

Remedy The toner cartridges of each color are installed in order of black, yellow, cyan, and magenta from the top. Reinstall the toner cartridge of the indicated color in the appropriate position. (See "Replacing Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-2)

#### <9G CHK "color" TNR>

(Warning Message)

Cause There is a possibility that a used toner cartridge whose life has once reached the end of its life is installed.

Remedy 1 Check if there is any problem with the toner cartridge of the indicated color.

Remedy 2 If the message appears and there is a problem with the print quality even after applying the Remedy 1, it is recommended that you remove the toner cartridge of the indicated color and replace it with a new one. (See "Replacing Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-2)

<A4 nn ERROR> ("nn" represents two-digit alphanumeric characters)

Cause A problem has occurred and the printer does not operate properly.

Remedy Cycle the power of the printer. If the message appears even after cycling the power of the printer, note down the message in the display, and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

<A5 nn ERROR> ("nn" represents two-digit alphanumeric characters)

Cause A problem has occurred and the printer does not operate properly.

Remedy Cycle the power of the printer. If the message appears even after cycling the power of the printer, note down the message in the display, and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

<A7 nn ERROR> ("nn" represents two-digit alphanumeric characters)

Cause A problem has occurred and the printer does not operate properly.

Remedy Cycle the power of the printer. If the message appears even after cycling the power of the printer, note down the message in the display, and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

<D7 nn ERROR> ("nn" represents two-digit alphanumeric characters)

Cause A problem has occurred and the printer does not operate properly.

Remedy Cycle the power of the printer. If the message appears even after cycling the power of the printer, note down the message in the display, and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

#### <D8 LAYOUT ERROR>

Cause The page cannot be laid out because the memory has run out.

Remedy 1 Set [Graphics Mode] in UFR II Printer Driver to [Raster Mode], then print again. (See Help of UFR II Printer Driver)

Remedy 2 After performing a soft reset using the RESET menu, perform a hard reset to increase the free memory space or cycle the power of the printer, and then print again. (Be aware that all the data in the memory that the printer has received will be deleted.)

Remedy 3 The printer continues printing by pressing [Online]. However, the data with which an error has occurred is not printed properly.

#### <D8 VERSION ERROR>

Cause You tried to print from a printer driver that is not for LBP5360.

Remedy Print from the printer driver for LBP5360.

#### <D8 SYNTAX ERROR>

Cause Invalid data is sent when printing using UFR II Printer Driver.

Remedy 1 Press [Online] to continue printing from the next data. However, the page with which an error has occurred and its subsequent pages are not printed.

Remedy 2 Confirm the data to be printed, then print again.

<D8 nn ERROR> ("nn" represents two-digit alphanumeric characters)

Cause A problem has occurred and the printer does not operate properly.

Remedy Cycle the power of the printer. If the message appears even after cycling the power of the printer, note down the message in the display, and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

#### <E7 CHK FIX.UNIT>

(Warning Message)

Cause The fixing unit is not installed or installed improperly.

Remedy Install the fixing unit properly. (See "Replacing Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-2)

<F9-nn PWR OFF>ON> ("nn" represents two-digit alphanumeric characters)

Cause A problem has occurred while the printer is processing print data.

Remedy Cycle the power of the printer. If the message appears even after cycling the power of the printer, note down the message in the display, and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

#### <FM SIZE ERROR>

<Auto Error Skip>

Cause There is some font with its size exceeds the pseudo-scalable font size.

Remedy The printer continues printing by pressing [Online]. However, the characters with which an error has occurred are not printed properly.

Cause There is a character in which the number of coordinate points on the contour lines exceeds the limitation of a pseudo-scalable font.

Remedy The printer continues printing by pressing [Online]. However, the characters with which an error has occurred are not printed properly.

<HF HDD FULL> <Auto Error Skip>

Cause Free space in the hard disk has run out.

Remedy 1 The printer is ready to print by pressing [Online], ignoring the current process.

Remedy 2 Delete any unnecessary data from among the data saved on the hard disk.

#### <PC LOAD "size">

Cause The paper of the size specified in the application is not loaded in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray, or the paper source for the different paper size is selected.

Remedy 1 Load the paper of the size selected in the application (or the one specified by scaling factors). (See "Printing from the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-17)

Remedy 2 If you are using the multi-purpose tray, check the size of the paper in the multi-purpose tray, and when the size does not match the size specified in the application (or the one specified by scaling factors), specify the setting properly. (See "Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray," on p. 4-35)

Remedy 3 Press [Feeder Selection], then select the paper cassette in which the paper of the matched size is loaded. (See "Selecting a Paper Source," on p. 4-13)

Remedy 4 Press [Online], then print to the currently loaded paper forcibly. If you are using the multi-purpose tray, the paper size setting for the multi-purpose tray automatically changes to the setting specified in the application.

### **IMPORTANT**

If you open the front cover or top cover when the message <PC LOAD "size"> is displayed, the message may disappear. However, be sure to follow the directions in the displayed message to change the paper.

#### <SL CHECK TONER>

Cause Packing materials are attached to any toner cartridge of Y (Yellow), M (Magenta), C (Cyan), or K (Black).

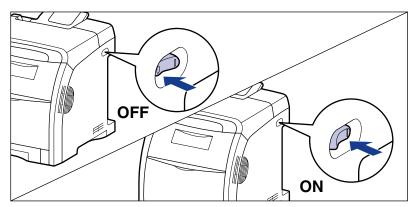
Remedy Remove the packing materials of the toner cartridge. (See "Replacing Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-2)

# Service Call Display

When a problem has occurred and the printer does not work properly, the service call shown in the figure appears:

Message	Cause	Remedy
("n" represents a number)	A problem has occurred inside the printer.	Cycle the power of the printer using the following procedure. If the message does not disappear after cycling the power of the printer several times, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.
E001-nnnn E003-nnnn ("n" represents a number)	A problem has occurred with the fixing unit of the printer.	Perform the following procedures from the Step 2 to contact your local authorized Canon dealer.
[F9-nn PWR 0FF>0N] ("n" represents a number)	A problem has occurred while the printer is processing print data.	Cycle the power of the printer using the following procedure.

Turn the printer and the computer OFF, wait for 10 seconds or longer, and then turn it ON again.



If the message does not reappear, the printer can be used as normal. If the error message still appears, proceed to the next step.

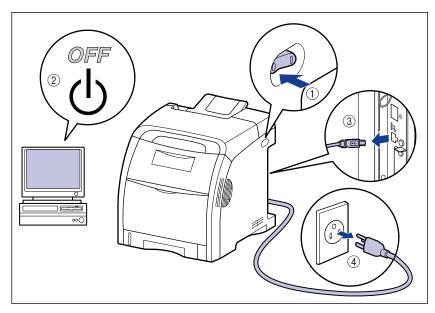
### 2 Note down the alphanumeric characters and message in the display.

## 3 Perform the following procedure.

Turn the printer OFF (1).

If a USB cable is connected, turn the computer off (2), and then disconnect the USB cable (3).

Disconnect the power plug from the AC power outlet 4.



## Contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

When contacting your Canon dealer, please report the problems and code number that you have noted.

## When You Cannot Obtain Appropriate Printout Results

If any problem occurs while you are using the printer, take the following measures depending on the symptoms.



#### **IMPORTANT**

The printer cannot be turned ON.

- If the printer does not operate properly or an error message appears, see "Message List" (p. 8-33) and "Service Call Display" (p. 8-47).
- When a paper jam occurs, see "Paper Jams," on p. 8-4.
- If a symptom that is not indicated in this section occurs, if none of the indicated remedies
  do not solve the problem, or if you cannot determine the problem, contact your local
  authorized Canon dealer.

### **Problems with the Power or Printer Operation**

•	
Cause 1	The power plug is unplugged from the AC power outlet.
Remedy	Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.
Cause 2	The printer is plugged to an extension cord or multiple power strip.
Remedy	Plug the power plug of the printer directly into the AC power outlet on the wall.
Cause 3	The breakers have tripped.
Remedy	Reset the breakers on the switch board.
Cause 4	There is a break in the power cord.
Remedy	If the printer is turned ON after replacing the power cord with the one that is of the same type and is used for other device, there is a break in the power cord. In this case, purchase a new power cord and replace it with the broken one.

The printer does not operate.

^ 4	T
Cause 1	The printer is offline.

Remedy Press [Online] to turn on the Online indicator. (See "Online and Offline," on p. 3-5)

- There is data remaining in the memory (the Job indicator is on). Cause 2
- Remedy Press [Online] to place the printer offline, then select FORM FEED in the RESET menu to output all the data remaining in the memory. (See "Canceling a Job," on p. 3-14)
- Cause 3 The interface cable is disconnected.
- Remedy Connect the interface cable firmly to the interface connectors on the computer and printer unit. (See "Connecting to a Computer," on p. 2-28)
- Cause 4 This printer or any optional accessory is broken.
- Remedy Clear the problem referring to the message in the display. (See "Message List," on p. 8-33, "Service Call Display," on p. 8-47)

All the indicators on the print server are off.

- Cause 1 The LAN cable is not connected properly or broken.
- Remedy 1 Remove the LAN cable once, then connect it again.
- Remedy 2 Replace the LAN cable with another one, then connect it.
- Cause 2 The cable is connected to the UP-LINK (cascade) port on the hub.
- Remedy 1 Connect the LAN cable to a port with a "X" mark.
- Remedy 2 If the hub has a UP-LINK (cascade) switch, switch to "X".
- Cause 3 A cross LAN cable is being used.
- Remedy 1 Replace the cable with a straight LAN cable.
- Remedy 2 Connect the cross LAN cable to the UP-LINK (cascade) port on the hub. If the hub has a UP-LINK (cascade) switch, switch to "=".



A cross LAN cable is a cable used to connect to a printer and computer directly.

- Cannot communicate with the hub. Cause 4
- Remedy 1 Make sure that the power of the hub is on.
- Remedy 2 Set network transmission setting for the print server according to the transmission speed of the connected hub. (See "ETHERNET DRIVER," on p. 6-49)
- Remedy 3 Replace the hub.
- Cause 5 The hardware of the print server is in an abnormal condition.
- Remedy Report the problems to your local authorized Canon dealer.

The printer stopped printing during a job.

Cause There is data remaining in the memory (the Job indicator is on).

Remedy Press [Online] to place the printer offline, then select FORM FEED in the RESET menu to output all the data remaining in the memory. (See "Canceling a Job," on p. 3-14)

The indicators on the control panel do not come on.

Cause 1 The printer is not ON.

Remedy Turn the printer ON.

Cause 2 The printer is in Power Save Mode.

Remedy The printer will be ready to print after you send print data or press any key on the control panel.

The keys on the control panel do not function.

Cause There is data remaining in the memory (the Job indicator is on).

Remedy Press [Online] to place the printer offline, then select FORM FEED in the RESET menu. (See "Canceling a Job," on p. 3-14)

A paper jam occurs each time you print.

Cause 1 The amount of the paper loaded in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray exceeds the load limitation.

Remedy Reduce the amount of paper to within the load limitation and print again. (See "Printing from the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-17, "Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray," on p. 4-35)

Cause 2 Paper is not loaded properly in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray.

Remedy Load the paper properly and print again. (See "Printing from the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-17, "Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray," on p. 4-35)

Cause 3 Unusable paper is loaded in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray.

Remedy Replace the paper with one that can be used and print again. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 4-2)

Cause 4 You are using UFR II Printer Driver, and you loaded custom paper of its long edges 8.50 in. (215.9 mm) or less in portrait orientation and printed when TRAY PAPER SIZE or CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) was set to MIXED SIZES. Remedy Load the paper in landscape orientation, then print again. Cause 5 When UFR II Printer Driver was not used, custom size paper was loaded in landscape orientation to print. Remedy Load the paper in portrait orientation, then print again. Cause 6 There is still jammed paper inside the printer. Remedy Remove any jammed paper and print again. (See "Paper Jams," on p. 8-4) The hard disk cannot be used. Cause 1 HARD DISK in the CONTROL MENU options in the SETUP is set to OFF. Remedy Set HARD DISK (See p. 6-19) to ON, and then perform a hard reset. Cause 2 An error has occurred in the hard disk. Remedy Format the hard disk in HDD MAINTENANCE (See p. 6-54) in the USER MAIN. options in the SETUP menu. If the same error occurs, replace the hard disk. Cause 3 The hard disk is not installed properly. Remedy Turn the printer OFF, then check if the hard disk is installed properly. (See "Installing a Hard Disk," on p. 9-22) Cause 4 The data cannot be saved on the hard disk because there is not sufficient free space in the hard disk. Remedy Delete any unnecessary jobs from among the jobs saved on the hard disk. Jobs cannot be saved. Cause 1 The data cannot be saved on the hard disk because there is not sufficient free space in the hard disk. Remedy The printer is ready to print by pressing [Online], ignoring the print data. The data of 2GB or larger in total cannot be saved. Cause 2 The number of the jobs exceeded the number of jobs you can save in the hard Remedy 1 The printer is ready to print by pressing [Online], ignoring the print data. Up to 100 jobs can be saved all together. Remedy 2 Delete any unnecessary jobs from among the jobs saved on the hard disk.

- Cause 3 The amount of the print jobs exceeded the amount of jobs you can save in the hard disk.
- Remedy 1 The printer is ready to print by pressing [Online], ignoring the print data. The data of 2GB or larger cannot be saved.
- Remedy 2 Delete any unnecessary jobs from among the jobs saved on the hard disk.

### **Problems with the Printout Results**

Unreadable characters are printed.

Cause 1 The data is printed from Windows without the supplied printer driver installed for Windows.

Remedy Install the supplied printer driver for Windows, then print again. (See Driver Guide)

Cause 2 The printer setting in the DOS application is not appropriate.

Remedy Specify the printer setting in the DOS application to the one that is compatible with this printer. (See Driver Guide)

A blank page cannot be printed.

Cause PAPER SAVE is set to ON.

Remedy When printing a blank page, set PAPER SAVE (See p. 6-56) and (See p. 6-61) to OFF.

The last page cannot be printed.

Cause The command that notifies of the end of the data is not sent from the computer (the Job indicator is on).

Remedy Press [Online] to place the printer offline, then select FORM FEED in the RESET menu (If you print using an application that does not have a printing function, the last page in which data is less than one page remains in the memory). (See "Canceling a Job," on p. 3-14)

The data lies outside the paper.

Cause 1 You are using UFR II Printer Driver, and you loaded custom paper of its long edges 8.50 in. (215.9 mm) or less in portrait orientation and printed when TRAY PAPER SIZE or CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2) was set to MIXED SIZES.

Remedy Load the paper in landscape orientation, then print again.

- Cause 2 When UFR II Printer Driver was not used, custom size paper was loaded in landscape orientation to print.
- Remedy Load the paper in portrait orientation, then print again.
- Cause 3 Paper of the size smaller than the data size is loaded.
- Remedy Load the paper of the size that matches the data size or print the data in the reduced size that matches the paper size. (See Driver Guide)
- Cause 4 The position of the paper is incorrect.
- Remedy Load the paper properly and print again. (See "Printing from the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-17, "Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray," on p. 4-35)
- Cause 5 A document with no margins was printed.
- Remedy 1 If you are using UFR II Printer Driver, secure a margin of 0.20 in. (5 mm) or more (0.39 in. (10 mm) or more for envelopes) around the data, then print again (Data cannot be printed within a 0.20 in. (5 mm) margin (0.39 in. (10 mm) for envelopes) on all sides of the paper). (See the instruction manual supplied with your application)
- Remedy 2 If you are using PCL Printer Driver, secure a margin of 0.17 in. (4.23 mm) or more (0.39 in. (10 mm) or more for envelopes) around the data, then print again (Data cannot be printed within a 0.17 in. (4.23 mm) margin (0.39 in. (10 mm) for envelopes) on all sides of the paper). (See the instruction manual supplied with your application)
  - **IMPORTANT**

You may not obtain the optimum print quality when printing data with no margin using the PCL printer driver. It is recommended to secure a margin of 0.20 in. (5 mm) or more around the data.

Remedy 3 If you select the [Print with Upper Left of Sheet as Starting Point] check box in the [Finishing Details] dialog box in the UFR II printer driver, the printer prints with its printable area expanded.

(III) IMPORTANT

Depending on the print data to be printed, the edge of paper may be missing partly during printing or may blot during color printing.

- Cause 6 The printing position has been adjusted using ADJ.START POS. in the USER MAIN. options in the SETUP menu.
- Remedy Adjust the printing position to the appropriate value using ADJ.START POS. in the USER MAIN. options in the SETUP menu. (See "Adjusting the Printing" Position," on p. 7-21)

The printing position is skewed.

Cause 1 GUTTER, OFFSET Y, or OFFSET X in the LAYOUT MENU options in the SETUP menu is specified.

Remedy Set GUTTER, OFFSET Y, or OFFSET X in the LAYOUT MENU options in the SETUP menu to "0", and then print again.

Cause 2 "Top Margin" and "Paper Position" in the application are not specified properly.

Remedy Specify the settings for "Top Margin" and "Paper Position" in the application properly, and then print again. (See the instruction manual supplied with your application)

Cause 3 The printing position has been adjusted using ADJ.START POS. in the USER MAIN. options in the SETUP menu.

Remedy Adjust the printing position to the appropriate value using ADJ.START POS. in the USER MAIN. options in the SETUP menu. (See "Adjusting the Printing Position," on p. 7-21)

The next page is printed from halfway across the previous page.

Cause "Line Spacing" or "Lines/Page" in the application is not specified properly.

Remedy Specify the settings for "Line Spacing" and "Lines/Page" in the application so that data fits in one page, and print again. (See the instruction manual supplied with your application)

Data is printed with its size reduced.

Cause The printer is set to reduce the print size.

Remedy Confirm the setting for [Manual Scaling] in the printer driver. (See Driver Guide)

Paper comes out wrinkled.

Cause 1 Paper is loaded in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray at an angle.

Remedy Load the paper in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray straight. (See "Loading Paper in the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-19, "Loading Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray," on p. 4-36)

Cause 2 Paper is damp since the paper has been stored in unsuitable condition.

Remedy Replace the paper with new one and print again. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 4-2)

#### Paper curls.

Cause 1 Paper is damp since the paper has been stored in unsuitable condition.

Remedy Replace the paper with new one and print again. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 4-2)

Cause 2 Paper is inappropriate.

Remedy Replace the paper with one that can be used with this printer. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 4-2)



### NOTE

When the printed side curls outward, set CURL ADJUSTMENT (See p. 6-55) in SP.PRINT MODE in the USER MAIN. options in the SETUP menu to ON, and then print again.

#### Nothing is printed on the paper.

Cause 1 Multiple sheets of paper were fed at a time.

Remedy Align the paper stack in the paper cassette or multi-purpose tray properly and load it again. If you are using transparencies, coated paper, or labels, fan them thoroughly and load them again. (See "Printing from the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-17, "Printing from the Multi-purpose Tray," on p. 4-35)

Cause 2 A problem has occurred inside the printer.

Remedy 1 If <Ennn-nnnn> is displayed in the display, turn the power OFF, wait for 10 seconds or longer, and then turn the power ON again. This may clear the message.

Remedy 2 If the message does not disappear even after applying the Remedy 1, contact your local authorized Canon dealer for servicing.

### **Print Quality Problems**

Nothing is printed on the paper, but the paper is filled with a certain color.

Cause 1 The drum in any of the toner cartridges has deteriorated.

Remedy Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. (See "Replacing Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-2)

Cause 2 A problem has occurred inside the printer.

Remedy 1 If <Ennn-nnnn> is displayed in the display, turn the power OFF, wait for 10 seconds or longer, and then turn the power ON again. This may clear the message.

Remedy 2 If the message does not disappear even after applying the Remedy 1, contact your local authorized Canon dealer for servicing.

White streaks appear.

Cause The drum in any of the toner cartridges has deteriorated.

Remedy Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. (See "Replacing Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-2)

Printed pages have white specks.

Cause 1 Appropriate paper is not being used.

Remedy Replace the paper with one that can be used and print again. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 4-2)

Cause 2 Paper is damp since the paper has been stored in unsuitable condition.

Remedy Replace the paper with new one and print again. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 4-2)

Cause 3 The drum in any of the toner cartridges has deteriorated.

Remedy Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. (See "Replacing Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-2)

Residual images appear on the non-printed areas.

Cause 1 Printing paper is inappropriate.

Remedy Change the paper and print again. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 4-2)

Cause 2 The drum in any of the toner cartridges has deteriorated.

Remedy Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. (See "Replacing Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-2)

The overall print result is faint.

Cause 1 The setting for the toner density is not appropriate.

Remedy Adjust DENSITY:"color" (See p. 6-36) in the QUALITY MENU options in the SETUP menu.

Cause 2 TONER SAVE in the QUALITY MENU options in the SETUP menu is set to ON.

Remedy Set TONER SAVE (See p. 6-35) in the QUALITY MENU options in the SETUP menu to OFF.

The overall print result is dark. Cause 1 The setting for the toner density is not appropriate. Remedy Adjust DENSITY: "color" (See p. 6-36) in the QUALITY MENU options in the SETUP menu. Cause 2 The printer is exposed to direct sunlight or strong light. Remedy Move the printer to a place where it will not be exposed to direct sunlight or strong light. Alternatively, move the strong light source away from the printer. The print is uneven. Cause 1 Paper is too moist or too dry. Remedy Replace the paper with appropriate one and print again. (See "Paper Requirements." on p. 4-2) Cause 2 The toner cartridge has run out of toner, has deteriorated, or is damaged. Remedy Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. (See "Replacing Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-2) Front or back of the printed paper has smudge marks. Cause The fixing roller is dirty. Remedy Clean the fixing roller. (See "Cleaning the Fixing Roller," on p. 7-19) A portion of a page is not printed. Cause 1 The scale factor is incorrect. Remedy 1 Clear the [Manual Scaling] check box in the printer driver. If the check box is cleared, the scale factor will be set according to [Page Size] and [Output Size] automatically. In order to specify the setting for [Manual Scaling], display the [Page Setup] sheet. Remedy 2 Select the [Manual Scaling] check box in the printer driver, then specify an appropriate scale factor according to the paper size to be used. In order to specify the setting for [Manual Scaling], display the [Page Setup]

Remedy Load the paper properly. (See "Loading Paper in the Paper Cassette," on p. 4-19, "Loading Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray," on p. 4-36)

Cause 2

- Cause 3 A document with no margins was printed.
- Remedy 1 If you are using UFR II Printer Driver, data cannot be printed within a 0.20 in. (5 mm) margin (0.39 in. (10 mm) for envelopes) on all sides of the paper. If you are using PCL Printer Driver, data cannot be printed within a 0.17 in. (4.23 mm) margin (0.39 in. (10 mm) for envelopes) on all sides of the paper. Secure a margin around the data.
  - **IMPORTANT**

You may not obtain the optimum print quality when printing data with no margin using the PCL printer driver. It is recommended to secure a margin of 0.20 in. (5 mm) or more around the data.

Remedy 2 If you select the [Print with Upper Left of Sheet as Starting Point] check box in the [Finishing Details] dialog box in UFR II Printer Driver, the printer prints with its printable area expanded.



Depending on the print data to be printed, the edge of paper may be missing partly during printing or may blot during color printing.

Toner does not fix well.

- Cause 1 Appropriate paper is not being used.
- Remedy Replace the paper with one that can be used with this printer. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 4-2)
- Cause 2 Toner may not fix onto paper completely depending on the paper type.
- Remedy Set [Gray Compensation] to [On] in the printer driver. In order to specify the setting for [Gray Compensation], display the following dialog box.
  - For UFR II Printer Driver: Display the [Advanced Settings] dialog box by clicking [Details] in the [Quality] sheet, then clicking [Advanced Settings] in the [Detailed Settings] dialog box.
  - For PCL Printer Driver: Display the [Detailed Settings] dialog box by clicking [Details] in the [Quality] sheet.
- Cause 3 A problem has occurred inside the printer.
- Remedy 1 If <Ennn-nnnn> is displayed in the display, turn the power OFF, wait for 10 seconds or longer, and then turn the power ON again. This may clear the message.
- Remedy 2 If the message does not disappear even after applying the Remedy 1, contact your local authorized Canon dealer for servicing.

The printed colors appear different from those printed by another LBP5360 being used at the same time.

Cause The default setting of the toner density of K (Black), Y (Yellow), M (Magenta), or C (Cyan) is somewhat varied.

Remedy Adjust the toner density of K (Black), Y (Yellow), M (Magenta), or C (Cyan). (See "Adjusting the Color Balance," on p. 8-66)



Adjustment of the toner density affects all the color print jobs. Normally, use the printer with the toner density left to the default value (8).

Data is not printed in correct colors or colored text appears to be blurred due to a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors".

Cause 1 The toner cartridges are not installed properly.

Remedy Check if the toner cartridges are installed properly. (See "Replacing Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-2)

Cause 2 Any of the four color toner cartridges is almost out of toner, or the drum in any of the toner cartridges has deteriorated.

Remedy 1 Adjust the phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" in CALIBRATION (See p. 6-63) in the UTILITY menu.

Remedy 2 Replace the toner cartridge of the color for which <PREP."color" TNR>, <CHK "color" TNR>, or <CHG."color" TNR> is indicated with a new one. (See "Replacing Toner Cartridges," on p. 7-2)

Cause 3 Appropriate paper is not being used.

Remedy Replace the paper with one that can be used and print again. (See "Paper Requirements," on p. 4-2)

Cause 4 Data was sent before completing calibration, such as when the printer was first turned ON.

Remedy Confirm that <00 READY> is displayed in the display, then print again.



- When AFTER JOBS is selected in 1ST CALIBRATION (See p. 6-56) in the USER MAIN. options in the SETUP menu, calibration is performed at the completion of the first printing after the printer is turned ON.
- If you want to perform calibration, see "UTILITY Menu Settings," on p. 6-62.

The colors of thin lines or filled-in patterns are different from the specified colors, or do not appear at all.

Cause 1 Some colors cannot be reproduced due to the combination of colors or patterns.

Remedy 1 Adjust the colors in the application and print again.

Remedy 2 Change the patterns in the application and print again.

Cause 2 The color may appear different depending on the fill-pattern.

Remedy 1 Readjust to a darker color and print again.

Remedy 2 Reload paper to change the feeding direction, then print again.

Fill-patterns are not printed in the correct color (specified color).

Cause The fill-pattern of the print data and the dither pattern of the printer are interfering with one another.

Remedy 1 Print again without specifying a fill-pattern in the application.

Remedy 2 Set [Color Halftones], IB & W Halftones], or [Halftones] to [Gradation] or [Color Tonel in the printer driver.

> In order to specify the setting for [Color Halftones], [B & W Halftones], or [Halftones], display the [Detailed Settings] dialog box by clicking [Details] in the [Quality] sheet.

Remedy 3 If you are using UFR II Printer Driver, set [Graphics Mode] to [Raster Mode], [Rendering Rate] to [24 BPP], and [Gradation] to [Standard] to set [Color Halftones] or [B & W Halftones] to [Error Diffusion].

In order to specify the setting for [Graphics Mode], [Rendering Rate], [Gradation], [Color Halftones], or [B & W Halftones], display the [Detailed Settings] dialog box by clicking [Details] in the [Quality] sheet.

The displayed color and printed color differ when printing photos, etc.

Cause The method for adjusting color on the screen (RGB) and in the printer (YMC) is different. Therefore, there may be cases when the color on the screen cannot be printed out exactly as it appears.

Remedy 1 Set [Matching Method] to [Perceptual [Monitor Color Matched]] in the printer driver.

> In order to specify the setting for [Matching Method], display the [Matching] sheet by selecting the [Manual Color Settings] check box in the [Quality] sheet, and then clicking [Color Settings].

#### Remedy 2 Adjust [Gamma] in the printer driver.

In order to specify the setting for [Gamma], display the [Matching] sheet by selecting the [Manual Color Settings] check box in the [Quality] sheet, and then clicking [Color Settings].

Streaks appear in the gradated portions when printing diagrams with gradations.

#### Cause Gray compensation is applied to the gray color portions of the "streaks" in the diagrams.

Remedy Set [Gray Compensation] to [Off] in the printer driver. In order to specify the setting for [Gray Compensation], display the following dialog box.

- For UFR II Printer Driver: Display the [Advanced Settings] dialog box by clicking [Details] in the [Quality] sheet, then clicking [Advanced Settings] in the [Detailed Settings] dialog box.
- For PCL Printer Driver: Display the [Detailed Settings] dialog box by clicking [Details] in the [Quality] sheet.

Data is not printed in the correct color (specified color) even after specifying the same color for a filled-in pattern and its border.

#### Cause A special process may be applied depending on the line width of the border so that thin lines are printed clearly.

#### Remedy Adjust [Gamma] in the printer driver.

In order to specify the setting for [Gamma], display the [Matching] sheet by selecting the [Manual Color Settings] check box in the [Quality] sheet, and then clicking [Color Settings].

When printing from Windows, streaks appear on the printed paper, diagrams are printed with their colors partially different from the data, or diagrams that are not filled in with any color do not appear through another data over them and cannot be printed in correct color.

#### Cause The superimposed areas are misaligned because the document is printed with its size enlarged or reduced, or any complicated superimpose process is specified in the application.

Remedy Click [Details] in the [Quality] sheet, then set [Rendering Rate] to [24 BPP].

Colored text appears to be blurred.

Cause A bold font is being used for the colored text.

Remedy 1 Print again with thinner fonts.

### Remedy 2 Set [Matching Method] to [Perceptual [Monitor Color Matched]] in the printer driver.

In order to specify the setting for [Matching Method], display the [Matching] sheet by selecting the [Manual Color Settings] check box in the [Quality] sheet. and then clicking [Color Settings].

The printing position is skewed slightly depending on the color to be printed.

#### Cause

Although laser printers are manufactured with technology of high precision, a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" may be slightly conspicuous depending on the print image. Please note that this is due to the structure of laser printers, but not due to printer malfunction.

Remedy 1

Adjust the phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" in CALIBRATION (See p. 6-63) in the UTILITY menu.

Remedy 2 If [Gray Compensation] in the printer driver is set to [Off], poor print quality (a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors") may be alleviated. In order to specify the setting for [Gray Compensation], display the following dialog box.

- For UFR II Printer Driver: Display the [Advanced Settings] dialog box by clicking [Details] in the [Quality] sheet, then clicking [Advanced Settings] in the [Detailed Settings] dialog box.
- For PCL Printer Driver: Display the [Detailed Settings] dialog box by clicking [Details] in the [Quality] sheet.

The back of the printed paper has smudge marks.

Cause

The size of the print data was larger than that of the loaded paper.

Remedy

Check if the size of the print data matches that of the loaded paper.

The edge of paper blots during color printing.

Cause

The [Print with Upper Left of Sheet as Starting Point] check box is selected.

Remedy

Clear the [Print with Upper Left of Sheet as Starting Point] check box in the printer driver, then perform printing.

In order to specify the setting for [Print with Upper Left of Sheet as Starting Point], display the [Finishing Details] dialog box by clicking [Finishing Details] in the [Finishing] sheet.

Square areas that cannot be seen on the display appear around lines or text and are printed in a different color from the other areas.

#### Cause

A process that is different from the specified halftone process or color process may be applied depending on the operating system or application.

#### Remedy 1

In the QUALITY MENU options in the SETUP menu, specify the settings for GRAY COMPENSATE (See p. 6-39) so that the setting values for TEXT, GRAPHICS, and IMAGE are all the same, and then set [Gray Compensation] to [Printer Default] in the printer driver.

In order to specify the setting for [Gray Compensation], display the following dialog box.

- For UFR II Printer Driver: Display the [Advanced Settings] dialog box by clicking [Details] in the [Quality] sheet, then clicking [Advanced Settings] in the [Detailed Settings] dialog box.
- For PCL Printer Driver: Display the [Detailed Settings] dialog box by clicking [Details] in the [Quality] sheet.

Remedy 2 Set [Color Halftones], [B & W Halftones], or [Halftones] to any of [High Resolution], [Resolution], [Gradation], or [Color Tone] in the printer driver. In order to specify the setting for [Color Halftones], [B & W Halftones], or [Halftones], display the [Detailed Settings] dialog box by clicking [Details] in the [Quality] sheet.

#### Remedy 3

Set [Matching Mode] to [Gamma Adjustment] in the printer driver. In order to specify the setting for [Matching Mode], display the [Matching] sheet by selecting the [Manual Color Settings] check box in the [Quality] sheet, and then clicking [Color Settings].

Remedy 4 Set [Matching Mode] to [Printer Default] in the printer driver, then specify the settings for MATCHING METHOD (See p. 6-42) in the QUALITY MENU options in the SETUP menu so that the setting values for TEXT, GRAPHICS, and IMAGE are all the same.

> In order to specify the setting for [Matching Mode], display the [Matching] sheet by selecting the [Manual Color Settings] check box in the [Quality] sheet, and then clicking [Color Settings].

Colored lines and text come out faint.

Cause

Thin lines or text are being used.

Remedy

Select the [Prioritize Printing of Colored Lines and Text] check box in the printer driver.

In order to specify the setting for [Prioritize Printing of Colored Lines and Text], display the following dialog box.

- For UFR II Printer Driver: Display the [Advanced Settings] dialog box by clicking [Details] in the [Quality] sheet, then clicking [Advanced Settings] in the [Detailed Settings] dialog box.
- For PCL Printer Driver: Display the [Detailed Settings] dialog box by clicking [Details] in the [Quality] sheet.

## **Adjusting the Color Balance**

When all the printout results appear reddish or bluish, or the color balance is not appropriate, you can correct the colors by adjusting each toner density of C (Cyan), M (Magenta), Y (Yellow), K (Black). The toner density can be specified in the range of 1 to 16 and is set to the standard density (8) before shipment.

When adjusting the toner density using the control panel, use the following procedure.



#### **IMPORTANT**

While adjusting the toner density little by little, print the defective print data from the computer and check the printout results. If you cannot adjust the toner density, reset the density to the default value (8), and then contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

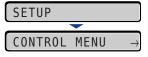


### 1 Press [Online].

The Online indicator goes off, allowing you to specify the settings on the control panel.



Press [Settings].





3 Select QUALITY MENU using [ ◄] and [ ▶], then press [OK].



The item for QUALITY MENU is displayed.



Select DENSITY of the target color using [ ◀] and [▶], then press [OK].

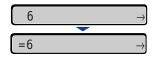


The toner density setting is displayed.



Select the toner density using [◄] and [▶], then press [OK].

The toner density is lightest when 1 is selected and densest when 16 is selected.



"=" is displayed on the left of the value, and the density is specified.

# **Installing the Optional Accessories**

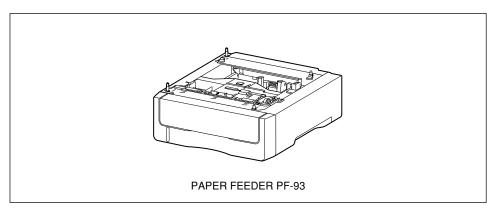


This chapter describes the procedures for installing the optional accessories on the printer.

Installing the Paper Feeder	9-2
Moving the Printer	
Removing the Packing Materials and Installing the Paper Feeder	9-8
Installing RAM	9-15
Installing a Hard Disk	9-22

## **Installing the Paper Feeder**

The paper feeder is to be installed at the bottom of the printer unit.





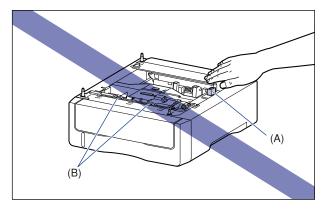
#### WARNING

Be sure to turn the printer OFF, unplug the power plug, and then disconnect all the interface cables and power cord from the printer before installing the paper feeder. Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.



#### **IMPORTANT**

• Do not touch the connector (A) or feed roller (B) in the paper feeder. This may result in damage to the printer or misfeeds.



• If you are printing from Cassette 2, make sure that Cassette 1 is set before printing. If you print from Cassette 2 when Cassette 1 is not set, this will cause paper jams.



Load paper in the paper feeder in the same manner as you load paper in Cassette 1. For more details, see "Chapter 4 Loading and Outputting Paper".

## **Moving the Printer**

When installing the paper feeder in the printer after installing the printer, move the printer to an appropriate location temporarily using the following procedure.



#### WARNING

Be sure to turn the printer and computer OFF, unplug the power plug, and then disconnect all the interface cables from the printer before moving the printer. Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.



#### **A** CAUTION

Do not carry the printer with the paper cassette attached. If you do so, the paper cassette may drop resulting in personal injury.

### Perform the following procedure.

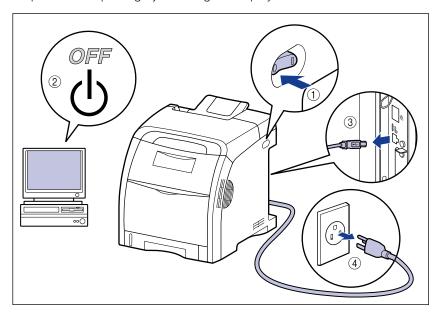
Turn the printer OFF 1.

If a USB cable is connected, turn the computer off (2), and then disconnect the USB cable 3.

Disconnect the power plug from the AC power outlet (4).

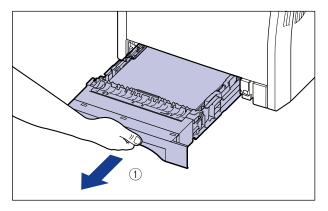
If you are using a hard disk, turn the printer OFF after performing a shutdown using the RESET menu.

If you are not using a hard disk, make sure that the Job indicator is off and that the printer is not printing by checking the display.

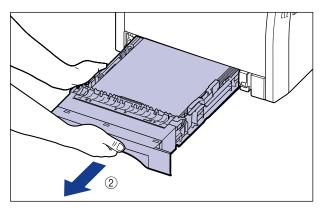


- Remove all the interface cables and the power cord from the printer.
- **3** Pull out the paper cassette.

Pull out the paper cassette gently 1.

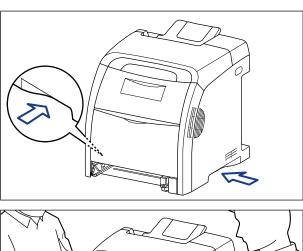


While holding the paper cassette with both hands, remove it from the printer unit as shown in the figure (2).



## Move the printer unit from the installation site.

Carry the printer with 2 or more people by holding the center of the lift handles on the lower portion of the printer and lifting it up at the same time.

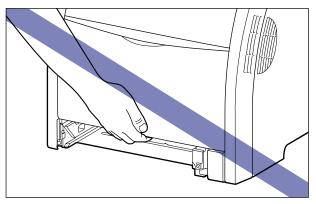


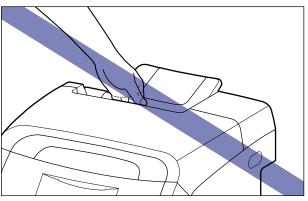


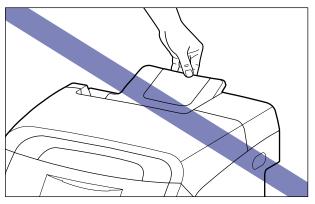
#### **A** CAUTION

• This printer weighs approximately 56.9 lb (25.8 kg) without the paper cassette installed. The printer must be carried by 2 or more people, and care must be taken to avoid hurting your back or other portions of your body when carrying the printer.

• Be sure not to hold the printer by the front panel, output area, or any portions other than the lift handles. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injury.









Make sure that the front cover and multi-purpose tray are closed before carrying the printer.

## Removing the Packing Materials and Installing the Paper **Feeder**

The paper feeder is to be installed at the bottom of the printer unit.



#### **CAUTION**

- Put the printer or paper feeder down slowly and carefully. Be careful not to hurt your hands.
- Do not carry the printer with the paper cassette attached. If you do so, the paper cassette may drop resulting in personal injury.



#### **IMPORTANT**

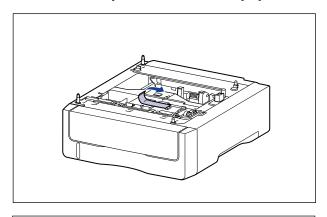
- If there is any packing material remaining inside the paper feeder, this may result in misfeeds or damage to the printer when operating the printer. Be sure to remove all the packing materials following the procedure.
- The removed packing materials are required when transporting the printer for relocation or maintenance. Keep them where they will not get lost.

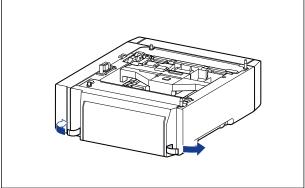


#### ∅ NOTE

The packing materials may be changed in form or position to be placed, or may be added or removed without notice.

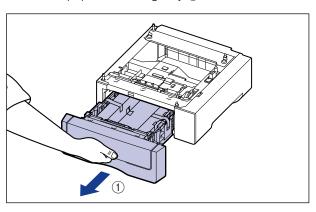
## 1 Remove the tape attached to the paper feeder (3 locations).



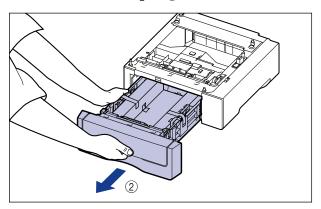


## **2** Pull out the paper cassette from the paper feeder.

Pull out the paper cassette gently ①.

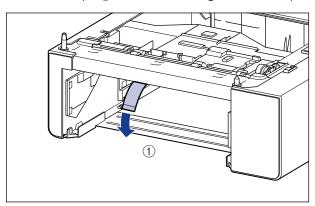


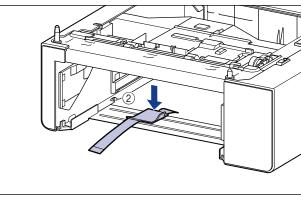
While holding the paper cassette with both hands, remove it from the paper feeder as shown in the figure 2).



### Remove the packing material with tape inside the paper feeder.

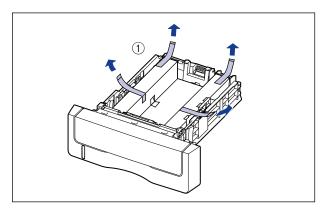
Remove the tape ①, then remove it together with the packing material ②.

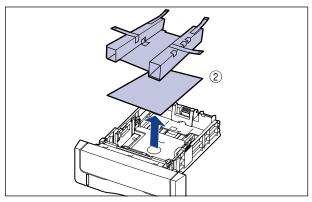




# 4 Remove the packing material with tape and a sheet of blank paper from the paper cassette.

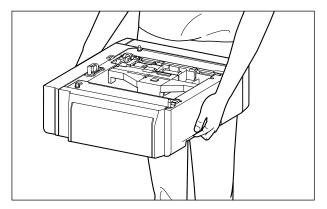
Remove the tape ①, then remove it together with the packing material ②.





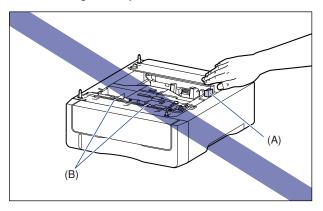
## Place the paper feeder at the installation site.

When carrying the paper feeder, hold the lift handles on both sides with both hands as shown in the figure.



### **IMPORTANT**

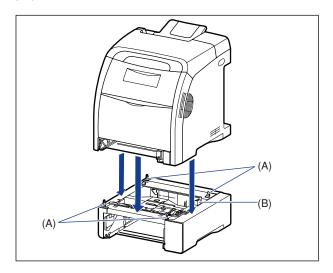
• Do not touch the connector (A) or feed roller (B) in the paper feeder. This may result in damage to the printer or misfeeds.



- Do not install the paper feeder on a platform that may warp from the weight of the printer and optional accessories, or where the printer is liable to sink (such as a carpet or mat).
- Secure sufficient space around the paper feeder so that you can install the printer and connect cords such as the power cord and interface cables.

6 When installing the printer unit on the paper feeder, gently set it down so that each surface of the printer unit is flush with the front or side surfaces of the paper feeder.

Also, match the positioning pins (A) and connector (B) when setting the printer unit.



(III) IMPORTANT

If the printer unit cannot be placed on the paper feeder properly, lift the printer unit once, hold it horizontally, and place it again. If you try to set the printer unit forcefully without lifting it, the connector and positioning pins may be broken.

- Set the paper cassette in the printer unit and paper feeder.
- 8 Connect the interface cables except for the USB cable, and connect the power cord.
- Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.

## 10 Connect the USB cable.



After installing the paper feeder, you have to specify the settings for the optional accessories in the [Configuration]/[Device Settings] sheet in the printer driver. You can obtain the status of the optional accessories automatically by clicking [Get Device Status] in the [Configuration]/[Device Settings] sheet.

If you cannot obtain the status of the optional accessories automatically, select the [500 Sheet Cassette] check box.

## **Installing RAM**

An expansion RAM module is to be installed on the main board at the rear side of the printer. A Phillips screwdriver is required for installing a RAM module. Have a screwdriver ready in advance that matches the size of the screws. Observe the following guidelines when installing RAM.



#### **WARNING**

Be sure to turn the printer OFF, unplug the power plug, and then disconnect all the interface cables and power cord from the printer before installing RAM. If you attempt to install RAM when the printer is ON or any cable is connected to the printer, this may result in an electrical shock.



#### CAUTION

Be careful when handling a RAM module. Touching the edges or a sharp portion of a RAM module may result in personal injury.



#### IMPORTANT

- A RAM module contains components that are sensitive to static electricity. Observe the following precautions when handling a RAM module to prevent damage from static electricity.
- Touch a metal object to dissipate static electricity before handling a RAM module.
- When handling a RAM module, do not touch anything that generates static electricity such as the computer display.
- Do not touch the main board parts, printed wire, or connectors with your hands.
- To prevent the RAM module from being affected by static electricity, keep it in the protective bag until it is ready to be installed.
- Be sure not to touch the switches on the main board. If you change the switches, the printer does not operate properly.

## Perform the following procedure.

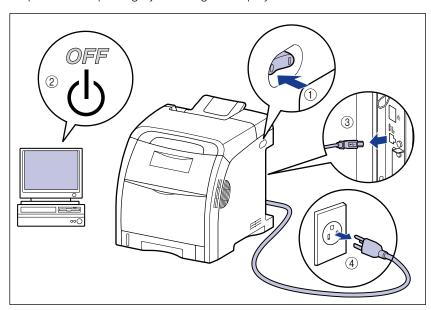
Turn the printer OFF (1).

If a USB cable is connected, turn the computer off (2), and then disconnect the USB cable (3).

Disconnect the power plug from the AC power outlet (4).

If you are using a hard disk, turn the printer OFF after performing a shutdown using the RESET menu.

If you are not using a hard disk, make sure that the Job indicator is off and that the printer is not printing by checking the display.

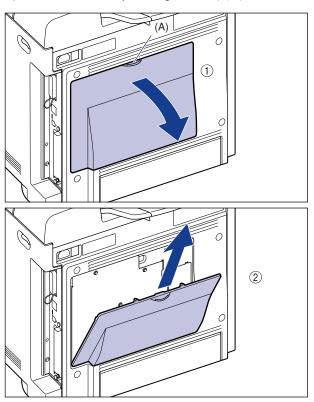


### Remove all the interface cables and the power cord from the printer.

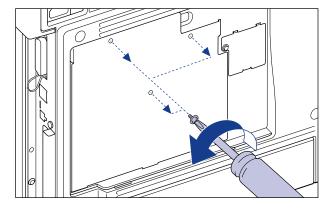
If there is not sufficient space to install the RAM module, move the printer to a place where you can work easier.

## 3 Remove the rear cover.

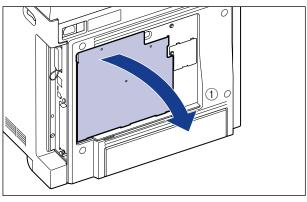
Open the rear cover by holding the tab (A) ①, then remove it ②.

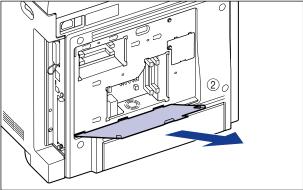


## 4 Remove the three screws.



## Remove the slot cover.



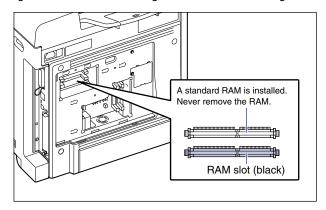


#### IMPORTANT

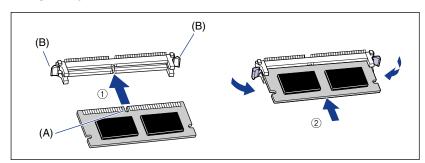
- Do not touch the main board parts, printed wire, or connectors with your hands.
- When installing RAM, be careful so that any metal objects such as screws do not touch the main board.
- Do not drop screws, paper clips, staples, or other metal objects inside the printer. If any of these objects should drop inside the printer, do not plug the power plug into the AC power outlet and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.
- Do not turn the printer ON without the rear cover or slot cover attached. This may result in damage to the printer.



The position where the RAM module is to be installed is as shown in the following figure. Confirm the mounting location before installing the RAM module.



Align the notch of the RAM module with the black RAM slot (A) as shown in the figure ①, and then insert the RAM module completely into the slot 2.

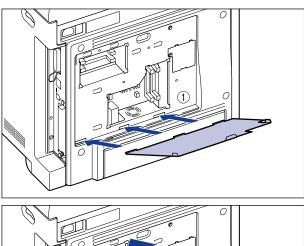


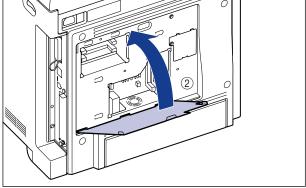
When the RAM module is installed properly, the levers (B) on both sides of the RAM slot close.



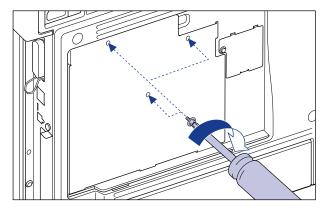
Be careful not to be injured by the edges of the main board parts or the RAM module.

Insert the projections of the slot cover into the holes on the rear side of the printer 1 and attach the slot cover to the printer 2.

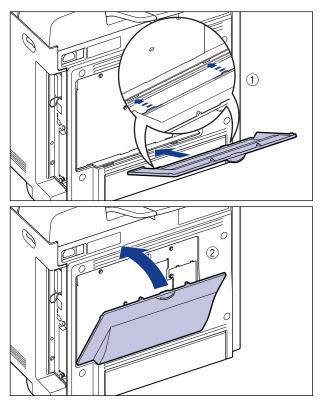




Secure the cover with the three screws.



Insert the projections of the rear cover into the holes on the rear side of the printer ① and attach the rear cover to the printer ② until it clicks.



- 10 Connect the interface cables except for the USB cable, and connect the power cord.
- 11 Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.
- 12 Connect the USB cable.

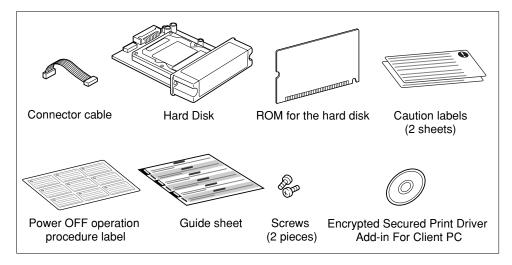


After installing the RAM, you have to specify the settings for the optional accessories in the [Configuration]/[Device Settings] sheet in the printer driver. You can obtain the status of the optional accessories automatically by clicking [Get Device Status] in the [Configuration]/[Device Settings] sheet.

If you cannot obtain the status of the optional accessories automatically, select the installed optional accessories from [Extended Memory].

## **Installing a Hard Disk**

A hard disk is to be installed in the expansion slot at the rear side of the printer unit. Make sure that all the following items are contained in the package before installing a hard disk. If any item is missing or damaged, please contact your local authorized Canon dealer.



When using a hard disk, you need to install the ROM for the hard disk supplied with the hard disk. Install the ROM as well as the hard disk. A Phillips screwdriver is required for installing a hard disk and the ROM. Have a screwdriver ready in advance that matches the size of the screws.

Observe the following guidelines when installing the hard disk.



#### **WARNING**

Be sure to turn the printer OFF, unplug the power plug, and then disconnect all the interface cables and power cord from the printer before installing a hard disk. If you attempt to install a hard disk when the printer is ON or any cable is connected to the printer, this may result in an electrical shock.

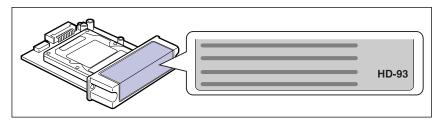


#### CAUTION

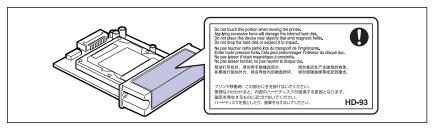
Be careful when handling the main board or hard disk. Touching the edges or a sharp portion of the main board or hard disk may result in personal injury.



 A hard disk that can be installed in this printer is the one in which "HD-93" is indicated on its label. If you use a hard disk in which "HD-93" is not indicated on its label, the printer does not operate properly.



- The main board and hard disk contain components that are sensitive to static electricity.
   Observe the following precautions when handling them to prevent damage from static electricity.
- Touch a metal object to dissipate static electricity before handling them.
- When handling them, do not touch anything that generates static electricity such as the computer display.
- Do not touch the main board parts, printed wire, or connectors with your hands.
- To prevent the hard disk from being affected by static electricity, keep it in the protective bag until it is ready to be installed. Also, keep the hard disk away from products that generate strong magnetic waves.
- Do not drop or jolt the hard disk.
- Because the hard disk is a precision device, do not press on the top of its drive, place it
  over another, or hit it against other objects.
- Be sure not to remove any label or others attached to the top of the drive of the hard disk.
   Also, do not attach any other labels.
- Do not move the hard disk suddenly from a cool location to a hot location.
- Be sure to observe the cautions in the caution label attached to the hard disk. If your familiar language is not used in the caution label, place the caution label supplied with the hard disk over the currently attached caution label.



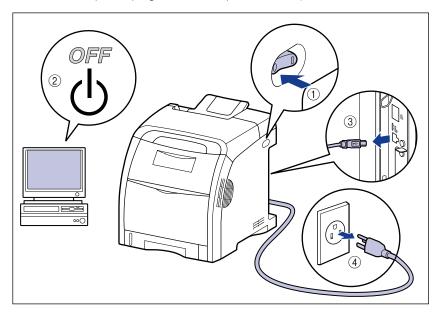
After installing the hard disk, you need to initialize the SETUP menu. Therefore, if you
have changed the printer setting, output the Configuration Page Print and confirm and
save the status of the printer setting before installing the hard disk. For details on the
procedure for outputting Configuration Page Print, see "Checking the Operations with
Configuration Page Print," on p. 2-35.

## Perform the following procedure.

Turn the printer OFF ①.

If a USB cable is connected, turn the computer off (2), and then disconnect the USB cable 3.

Disconnect the power plug from the AC power outlet 4.

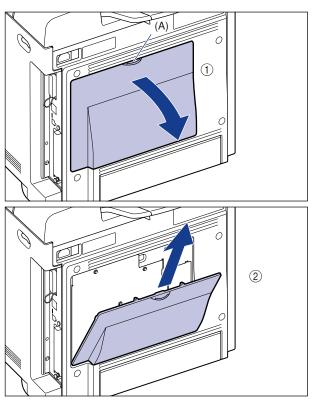


## Remove all the interface cables and the power cord from the printer.

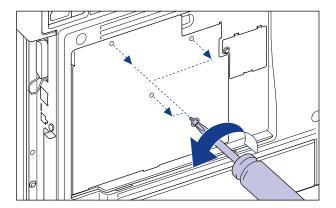
If there is not sufficient space to install the hard disk, move the printer to a place where you can work easier.

## 3 Remove the rear cover.

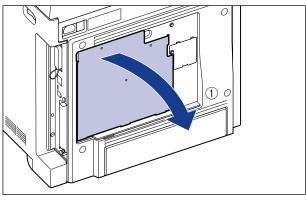
Open the rear cover by holding the tab (A) ①, then remove it ②.

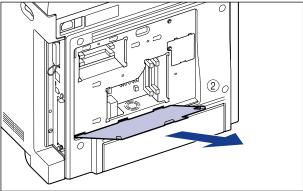


## 4 Remove the three screws.



## Remove the slot cover.



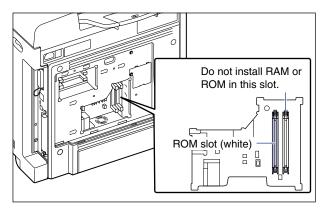


#### IMPORTANT

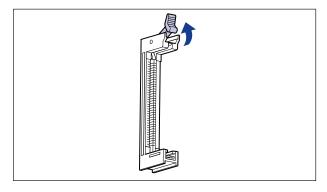
- Do not touch the main board parts, printed wire, or connectors with your hands.
- When installing the hard disk, be careful so that any metal objects such as screws do not touch the main board.
- Do not drop screws, paper clips, staples, or other metal objects inside the printer. If any of these objects should drop inside the printer, do not plug the power plug into the AC power outlet and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.
- Do not turn the printer ON without the rear cover or slot cover attached. This may result in damage to the printer.



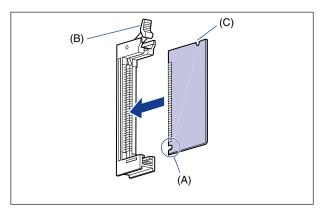
The position where the ROM for the hard disk is to be installed is as shown in the following figure. Confirm the mounting location before installing the ROM for the hard disk.



6 Open up the lever of the white ROM slot for a hard disk.

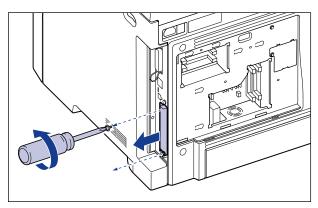


7 Insert the ROM module into the slot guides so that its notch (A) is at the opposite side of the lever (B), and then press the ROM module completely into the slot.



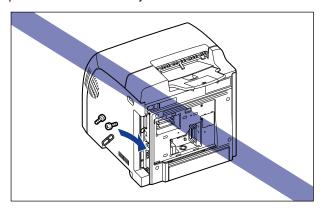
When the ROM module is installed properly, the projection of the lever is caught in the notch (C) of the ROM.

8 Remove the screws and remove the protective plate for the expansion slot.

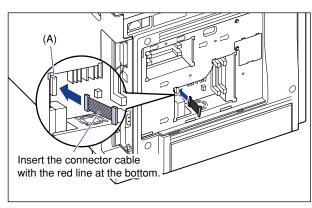


- (III) IMPORTANT
  - The removed protective plate and screws are required when the hard disk is removed. Keep them where they will not get lost.

 After removing the protective plate, be careful not to drop screws, paper clips, staples, or other metal objects inside the expansion slot. If any of these objects should drop inside the expansion slot, do not plug the power plug into the AC power outlet and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.



Insert the connector cable supplied with the hard disk into the socket (A) on the main board.





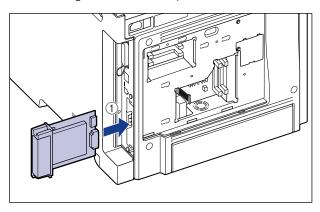
Be careful not to be injured by the edges of the main board parts or the hard disk.

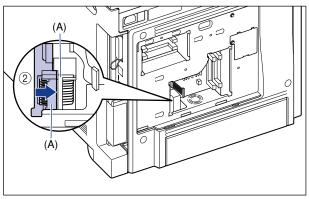
IMPORTANT

Do not try to insert the socket forcibly when it is misaligned or set at angle. The pins may be damaged, and the hard disk may not operate properly.

## 10 Insert the hard disk into the expansion slot $\odot$ , and then press it firmly so that the connectors (A) mate to each other 2.

Hold the metal cover portion of the hard disk and insert the disk while aligning it with the slot guide inside the expansion slot.

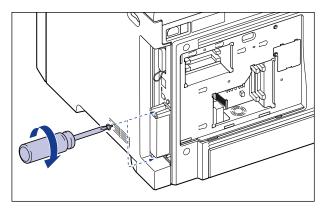




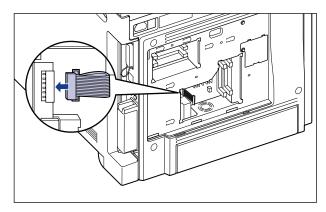
#### IMPORTANT

- Insert the hard disk firmly so that the connector of the main board and that of the hard disk mate to each other.
- Do not touch the main board parts, printed wire, or connectors with your hands.

# 11 Secure the top and bottom portions of the hard disk with the two screws supplied with the hard disk.



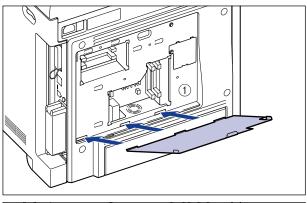
# 12 Insert the blue connector of the connector cable into the blue socket on the hard disk.

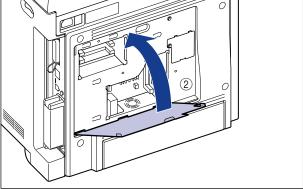


#### IMPORTANT

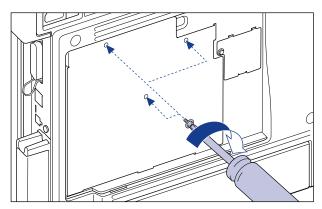
Do not try to insert the socket forcibly when it is misaligned or set at angle. The pins may be damaged, and the hard disk may not operate properly.

13 Insert the projections of the slot cover into the holes on the rear side of the printer 1) and attach the slot cover to the printer 2.

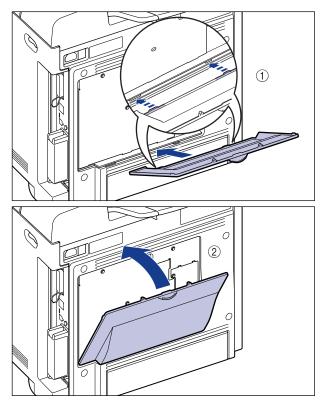




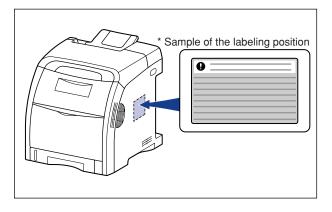
14 Secure the cover with the three screws.



15 Insert the projections of the rear cover into the holes on the rear side of the printer ① and attach the rear cover to the printer ② until it clicks.



16 Attach "Power OFF operation procedure label" supplied with the hard disk to a conspicuous part on the printer unit.





When you turn the printer OFF after installing the hard disk, execute SHUT DOWN following the directions in the label in order to protect the hard disk, and then press "O" of the power switch.

- 17 Connect the power cord.
- 18 Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.
- 19 Press "I" of the power switch to turn the printer ON.
- 20 Initialize the SETUP menu using the following procedure.
- (III) IMPORTANT

Initialize the SETUP menu after installing the hard disk. The functions of the hard disk are formatted and become effective by initializing the SETUP menu.



Utility(

21 Press [Settings].



22 Select INITIALIZE MENU using [ ◀] and [▶], then press [OK].



A confirmation message is displayed.



**23** Press [OK].



**IMPORTANT** 

If the message <INITIALIZE FAIL> appears when the initialization of the SETUP menu is executed, the SETUP menu is not initialized.

#### **24** After completing the initialization, perform a hard reset or cycle the power of the printer.

After starting the printer, the hard disk is formatted. While the hard disk is being formatted, <FORMATTING> is displayed in the display. Wait for a moment until the format is completed. After the format of the hard disk is completed, connect all the interface cables.

#### (IMPORTANT

The hard disk is formatted automatically after you install the hard disk, initialize the SETUP menu, and start the printer. If the format is not performed at this point, perform QUICK FORMAT (See p. 6-54) in HDD MAINTENANCE in the SETUP menu.

#### **⊘** NOTE

After installing the hard disk, you have to specify the settings for the optional accessories in the [Configuration]/[Device Settings] sheet in the printer driver. You can obtain the status of the optional accessories automatically by clicking [Get Device Status] in the [Configuration]/[Device Settings] sheet.

If you cannot obtain the status of the optional accessories automatically, select the [Hard Disk Installed] check box.

## **Appendix**

This chapter describes the contents of the various lists, printer specifications, and index.

The Lists Common to All the Settings in the Operation Mode	10-2
The Lists Common to Certain Settings in the Operation Mode	10-4
Typeface Samples	
Symbol Sets Supported	
Specifications	
Dimensions of Each Part	10-36
Index	

# The Lists Common to All the Settings in the Operation Mode

This section describes the lists common to all the settings in the operation mode.



#### **IMPORTANT**

The following list is a sample. The contents may partially differ from the lists printed by your printer.

#### **Configuration Page**

The capacity of the built-in RAM and the settings for the common printing environment are printed.

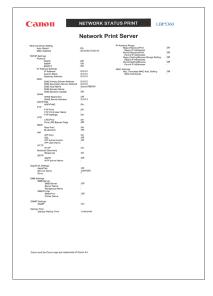
- 1. Make sure that the printer is online.
- 2. Press [Utility] to display the UTILITY menu.
- 3. Press [▶] to display CONFIG.PAGE.
- **4.** Press [OK] to output the page.



#### **Network Status Print**

Prints the version number and the settings of the print server equipped with this printer.

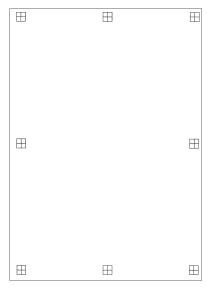
- 1. Make sure that the printer is online.
- 2. Press [Utility] to display the UTILITY menu.
- 3. Press [▶] to display NW STATUS PRINT.
- 4. Press [OK] to output the page.



#### **Printing Position Adjustment Print**

Displays the current printing positions of each paper source. Adjust the printing positions referring to this print. For more details, see "Adjusting the Printing Position," on p. 7-21.

- 1. Press [Feeder Selection].
- Select PAPER SOURCE using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].
- Select the paper source that you want to check the printing position using [◄] and [►], then press [OK].
- 4. Press [Online].
- 5. Make sure that the printer is online. If the printer is not online, press [Online].
- 6. Press [Utility] to display the UTILITY menu.
- 7. Display PRNTPOSNPRINT using [▶].
- **8.** Press [OK] to output the page.



# The Lists Common to Certain Settings in the Operation Mode

This section describes the lists common to certain settings in the operation mode.



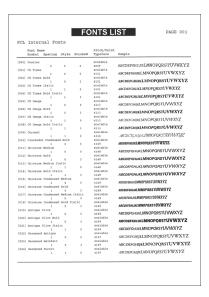
#### **IMPORTANT**

The following list is a sample. The contents may partially differ from the lists printed by your printer.

#### **PCL Fonts List**

A list of the fonts that can be used in the PCL mode is printed.

- 1. Make sure that the printer is online.
- 2. Press [Utility] to display the UTILITY menu.
- 3. Press [►] to display PCL UTILITY.
- 4. Press [OK] to display Exclusive Utilities for PCL.
- 5. Press [▶] to display FONTS LIST.
- 6. Press [OK] to output the page.



## Typeface Samples

The fonts lists printed from the UTILITY menu are a comprehensive listing of all fonts currently available. The listing contains the names and print samples of the fonts stored on the printer.

## Scalable Fonts (PCL)

Courier ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

CG Times ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

CG Times Bold ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

CG Times Italic ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

CG Times Bold Italic ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ

CG Omega ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

CG Omega Bold ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

CG Omega Italic ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

CG Omega Bold Italic ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Coronet ABCDERGAUJKLWWOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Clarendon Condensed Bold ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Univers Medium ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Univers Bold ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Univers Medium Italic ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
Univers Bold Italic ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Univers Condensed Medium

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Univers Condensed Bold ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Univers Condensed Medium Italic

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Univers Condensed Bold Italic

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Antique Olive ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Antique Olive Bold ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Antique Olive Italic ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Garamond Antiqua ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Garamond Halbfett ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Garamond Kursiv ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Garamond Kursiv Halbfeet

Marigold

Albertus Medium
Albertus Extra Bold

Arial

Arial Bold Arial Italic Arial Bold Italic

Times New Roman

Times New Roman Bold Times New Roman Italic

Times New Roman Bold Italic

Helvetica

Helvetica Bold
Helvetica Oblique
Helvetica Bold Oblique

Helvetica Narrow

Helvetica Narrow Bold Helvetica Narrow Oblique Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique

Palatino Roman Palatino Bold Palatino Italic

Palatino Bold Italic

ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi

ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book Oblique

ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi Oblique

ITC Bookman Light
ITC Bookman Demi

ITC Bookman Light Italic

ITC Bookman Demi Italic

New Century Schoolbook Roman New Century Schoolbook Bold

New Century Schoolbook Italic

New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic

Times Roman

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

**ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** 

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

**ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** 

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

**ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** 

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRST**UVWXYZ** 

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Typeface Samples

Times Bold **ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** Times Italic *ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ* Times Bold Italic **ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** ITC Zapf Chancery Medium Italic ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ Symbol ΑΒΧΔΕΦΓΗΙΘΚΛΜΝΟΠΘΡΣΤΥςΩΞΨΖ SymbolPS ΑΒΧΔΕΦΓΗΙΘΚΛΜΝΟΠΘΡΣΤΥ ΩΞΨΖ Wingdings ITC Zapf Dingbats **◇+·•••**◆◆★☆**○**☆★★★★★★★★★★★★★ Courier Bold ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ Courier Italic ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ Courier Bold Italic ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ **ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** Letter Gothic **ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** Letter Gothic Bold Letter Gothic Italic *ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ* CourierPS ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ CourierPS Bold ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ CourierPS Oblique ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ CourierPS Bold Oblique ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

### Bitmapped Fonts (PCL)

Line Printer (10U)

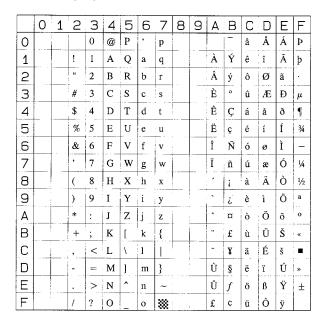
Line i finter (100)	ABCDEFGHIJKíóúñNºº¿▽¬¼¼¡«»
Line Printer (8U)	ABCDEFGHIJKÄÄĖĖĖĪÏ ^^*""ŪŪ£
Line Printer (0N)	ABCDEFGHIJK;¢£¤¥¦§"Ф≉«~-®
Line Printer (11U)	ABCDEFGHIJKíóúñÑöŐ¿ãÃlh;³¤
Line Printer (12U)	ABCDEFGHIJKíóúñÑ≛≗¿®≒%¼i≪»
Line Printer (1U)	ABCDEFGHIJK
Line Printer (2N)	ABCDEFGHIJKĄ~٤ĽŚ§~ŠŞŤŻ-ŽŻ
Line Printer (5N)	ABCDEFGHIJK¦¢£¤¥¦§″©³≪¬-®⁻
Line Printer (6N)	ABCDEFGHIJKĄĒĢĪĨͧĻĐŠŦŽ-ŪŊ
Line Printer (9N)	ABCDEFGHIJKi¢£€¥Š§Š©ª≪¬~®⁻

## Symbol Sets Supported

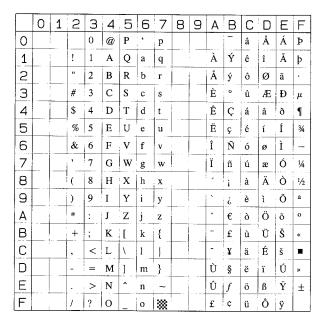
This section provides a list to the character code tables for the characters in each symbol set.

## **Character Code Tables**

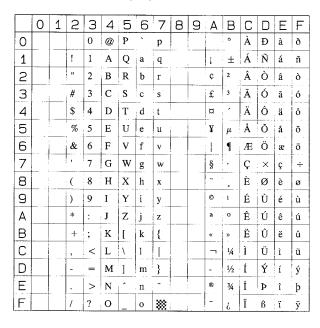
#### ■ Roman-8 (8U)



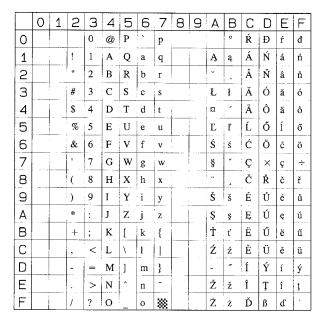
#### ■ Roman-9 (4U)



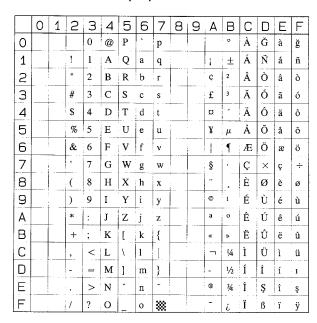
#### ■ ISO 8859/1 Latin 1 (0N)



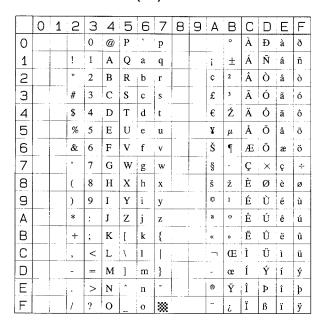
#### ■ ISO 8859/2 Latin 2 (2N)



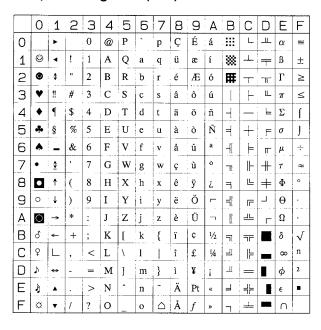
#### ■ ISO 8859/9 Latin 5 (5N)



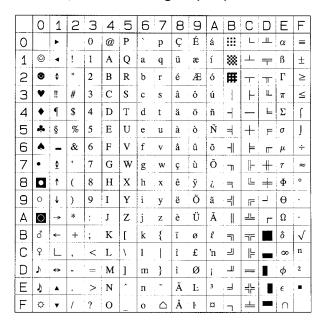
#### ■ ISO 8859/15 Latin 9 (9N)



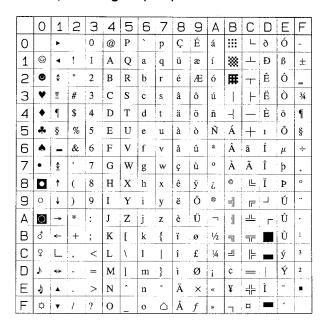
#### ■ PC-8, Code Page 437 (10U)



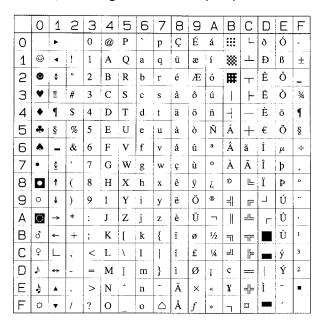
#### ■ PC-8 D/N, Danish/Norwegian (11U)



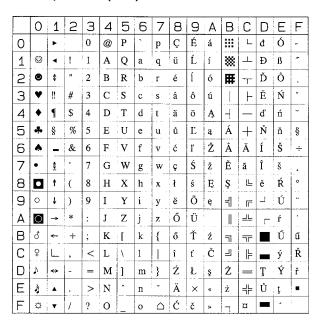
#### ■ PC-850, Multilingual (12U)



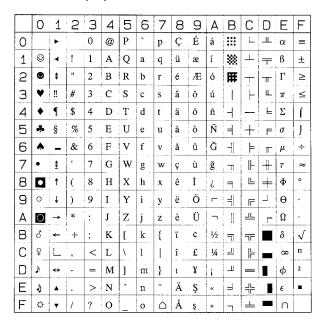
#### ■ PC-858, Multilingual with Euro (13U)



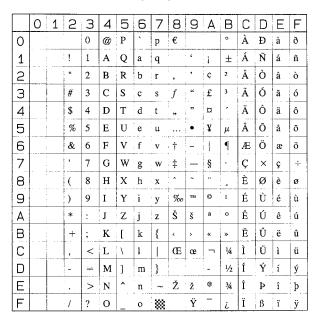
#### ■ PC-852, Latin 2 (17U)



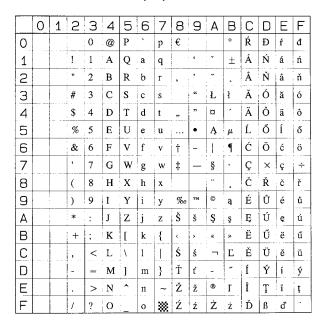
#### ■ PC-Turkish (9T)



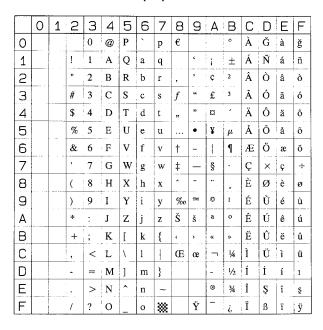
#### **■** Windows 3.1 Latin 1 (19U)



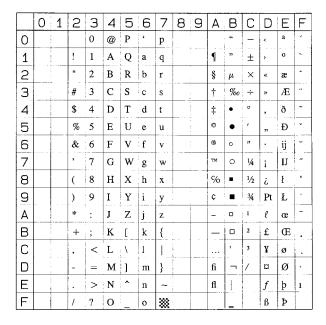
#### ■ Windows 3.1 Latin 2 (9E)



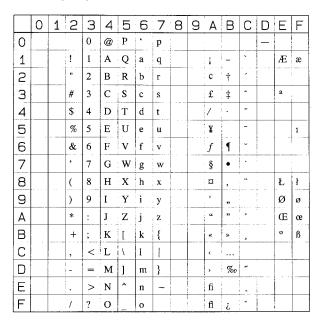
#### ■ Windows 3.1 Latin 5 (5T)



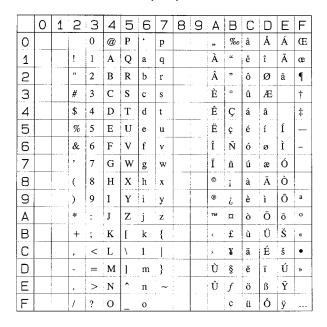
#### ■ DeskTop (7J)



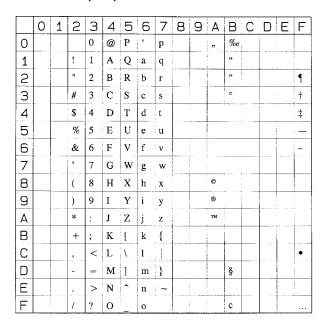
#### ■ PS Text (10J)



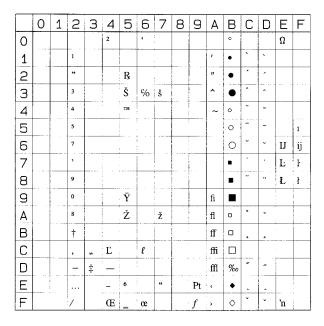
#### ■ Ventura International (13J)



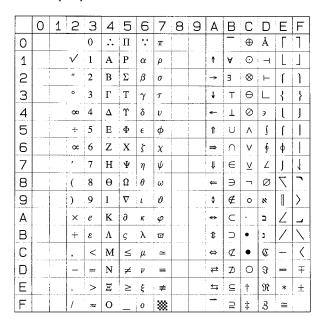
#### ■ Ventura US (14J)



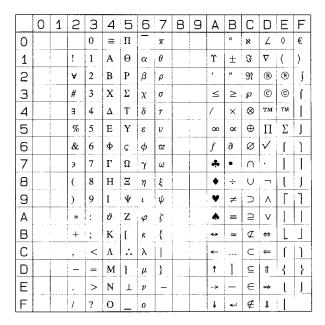
#### ■ Microsoft Publishing (6J)



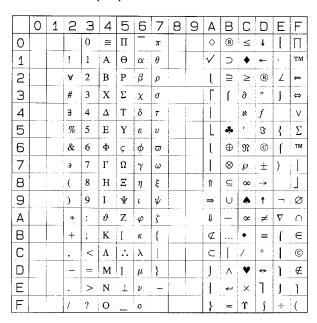
#### ■ Math-8 (8M)



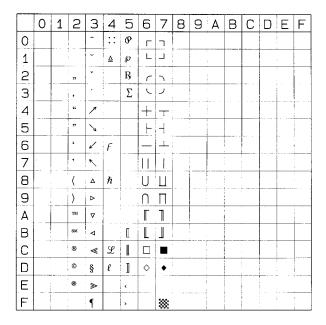
#### ■ PS Math (5M)



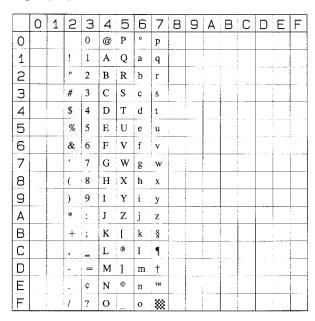
#### ■ Ventura Math (6M)



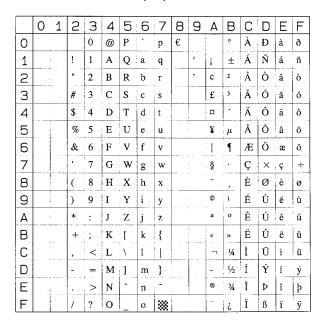
#### ■ PI Font (15U)



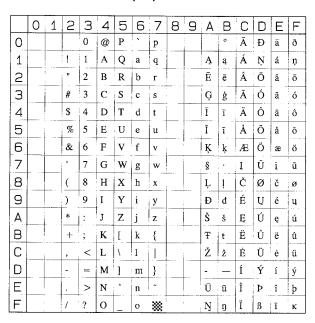
#### ■ Legal (1U)



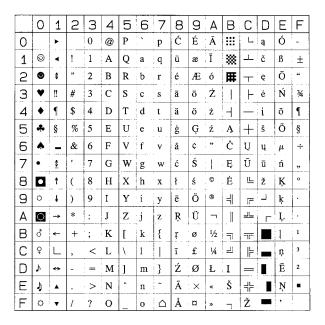
#### ■ Windows 3.0 Latin 1 (9U)



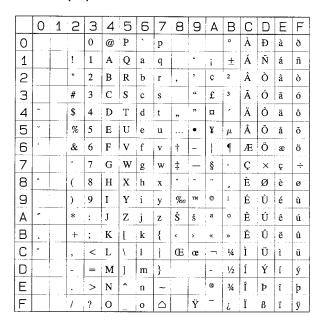
#### ■ ISO 8859/10 Latin 6 (6N)



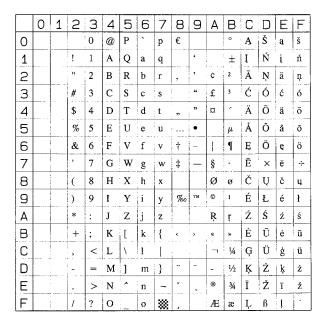
#### ■ PC-775 (26U)



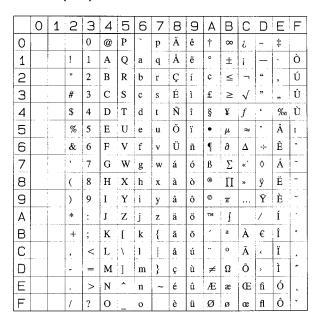
#### ■ PC-1004 (9J)



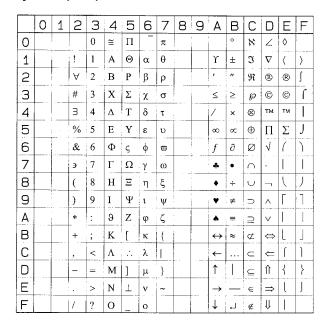
#### ■ Windows Baltic (19L)



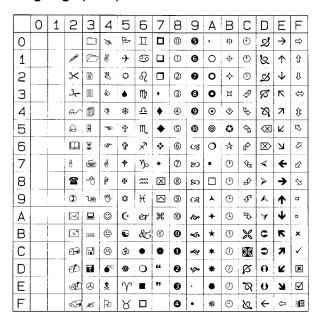
#### ■ MC Text (12J)



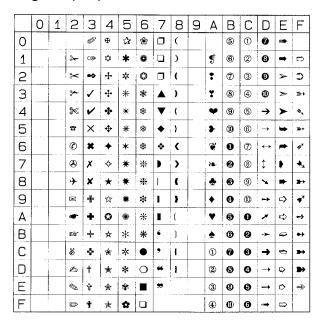
#### ■ Symbol (19M)



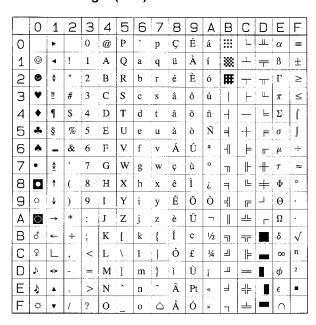
#### ■ Wingdings (579L)



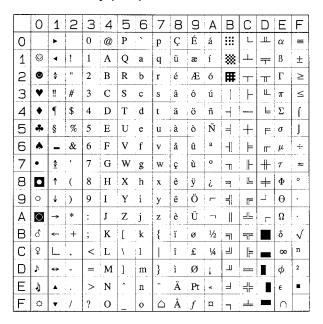
#### ■ Dingbats (14L)



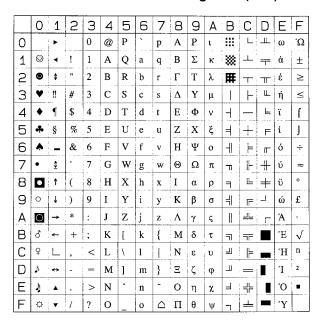
#### ■ PC-860 Portugal (20U)



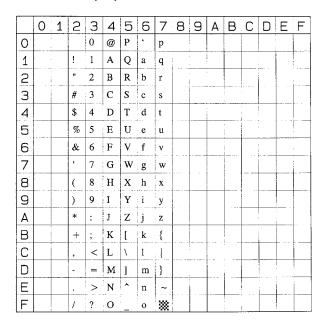
#### **■ PC-865 Norway (25U)**



#### ■ PC-8 Greek Alternate Code Page 437 (14G)

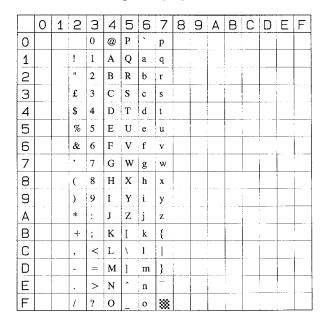


#### ■ ISO 6: ASCII (0U)



## **ISO Substitution Tables**

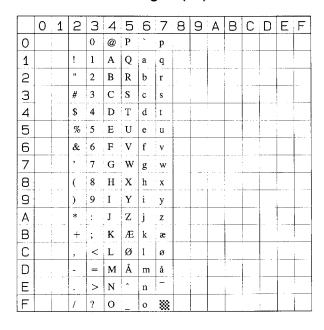
#### ■ ISO 4: United Kingdom (1E)



#### ■ ISO 11: Swedish (0S)

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	Α	В	С	D	Е	F
0			:	0	É	P	é	p								
1			!	1	Α	Q	a	q						ļ		
2			"	2	В	R	b	r								
3			#	3	C	S	c	s								
4			¤	4	D	Т	d	t								
5			%	5	E	U	e	u								
6			&	6	F	V	f	v							:	
7			,	7	G	w	g	w								
8			(	8	Н	X	h	х								
9			)	9	I	Y	i	у				i		:		
Α			*	:	J	Z	j	z								
В			+	;	K	Ä	k	ä								
С				<	L	Ö	1	ö								
D				=	M	Å	m	å								
C D E F				>	N	Ü	n	ü				<u> </u>				
F			/	?	0		o	**								

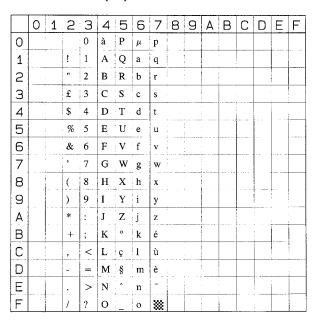
#### ■ ISO 60: Danish/Norwegian (0D)



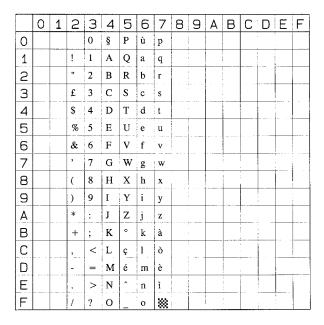
#### ■ ISO 21: German (1G)

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	Α	В	С	D	E	F
0			:	0	§	Р	`	p								
1			!	1	Α	Q	a	q								
2			"	2	В	R	b	r								
3			#	3	С	s	с	s						-		
4			\$	4	D	Т	d	t								
5			%	5	Е	U	e	u								
6			&	6	F	v	f	v								
6 7 8			,	7	G	w	g	w								
8			(	8	Н	X	h	x								
9			)	9	I	Y	i	у						1.	!	
Α			*	:	J	Z	j	z					<u>L</u> .			
В			+	;	K	Ä	k	ä	İ							
С			,	<	L	Ö	1	ö							<u></u>	
				=	M	Ü	m	ü						i	<u>.</u>	
D E F				>	N	^	n	ß	ļ					L		
F			/	?	o		o	*				:				

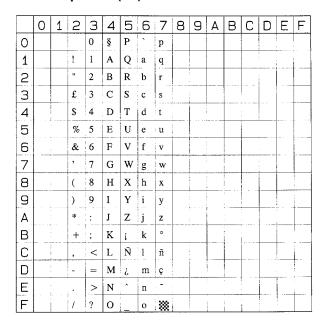
#### ■ ISO 69: French (1F)



#### ■ ISO 15: Italian (0I)



#### ■ ISO 17: Spanish (2S)



## **Specifications**

## **Hardware Specifications**

Туре	Desktop Page Printer
Printing method	Electrophoto Method (On-demand fixing)
Resolution	600dpi
Printing speed Plain paper (16.0 to 27.9 lb Bond (60 to 105 g/m²))	When printing Letter continuously Black and white printing: 21 pages/min. Color printing: 21 pages/min. * Print speed may drop in stages depending on the paper size, paper type, print copies, and the settings of the fixing mode. (This is because the safety function that prevents damage caused by heat becomes active.)
Warm-up time (68 °F (20 °C))	O second from standby mode  - 45 seconds or less from power ON *1*2  - Approximately 20 seconds when the printer is in Power Save Mode 2 (the Printer Power Save mode)*1*3  *1 May vary depending on the use conditions (such as the availability of the optional accessories and installation environment).  *2 190 seconds or less from power ON immediately after the toner cartridges are replaced  *3 Approximately 60 seconds when any cover is opened or closed during the sleep state
First print time	When printing Letter size paper 10.1 seconds or less * May vary depending on the output environment.

Paper size	Cassette 1	<ul> <li>Standard sizes A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Foolscap, 16K</li> <li>Custom sizes When loading paper in portrait orientation: Width 5.83 to 8.50 in. (148.0 to 215.9 mm); Length 8.27 to 14.00 in. (210.0 to 355.6 mm) When loading paper in landscape orientation (Only when UFR II Printer Driver is used): Width 8.27 to 8.50 in. (210.0 to 215.9 mm); Length 8.27 to 8.50 in. (210.0 to 215.9 mm)</li> <li>Paper capacity: approx. 250 sheets (20.0 lb Bond (80 g/m²))</li> </ul>
	Cassette 2 (Optional)	<ul> <li>Standard sizes A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Foolscap, 16K</li> <li>Custom sizes When loading paper in portrait orientation: Width 5.83 to 8.50 in. (148.0 to 215.9 mm); Length 8.27 to 14.00 in. (210.0 to 355.6 mm) When loading paper in landscape orientation (Only when UFR II Printer Driver is used): Width 8.27 to 8.50 in. (210.0 to 215.9 mm); Length 8.27 to 8.50 in. (210.0 to 215.9 mm)</li> <li>Paper capacity: approx. 500 sheets (20.0 lb Bond (80 g/m²))</li> </ul>
	Multi-purpose Tray	<ul> <li>Standard sizes</li> <li>A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive,</li> <li>Statement, Foolscap, 16K, Envelope DL,</li> <li>Envelope COM10, Envelope C5, Envelope</li> <li>Monarch, Envelope B5, Index Card</li> <li>Custom sizes</li> <li>When loading paper in portrait orientation: Width</li> <li>3.00 to 8.50 in. (76.2 to 215.9 mm); Length 5.00 to</li> <li>14.00 in. (127.0 to 355.6 mm)</li> <li>When loading paper in landscape orientation (Only when UFR II Printer Driver is used): Width 5.00 to</li> <li>8.50 in. (127.0 to 215.9 mm); Length 5.00 to 8.50 in. (127.0 to 215.9 mm)</li> <li>Paper capacity: approx. 100 sheets (20.0 lb Bond (80 g/m²))</li> </ul>
Automatic 2-sided printing		A4, Legal, Letter, Foolscap
Paper output		Face down
Output capacity		Output tray: approx. 250 sheets (20.0 lb Bond (80 g/m²))

Noise (Sound value released based on ISO9296)		Audio power level During standby: Background noise level (4.3 B or less) During operation: 6.6 B or less Sound pressure level (Bystander position) During standby: 35 dB [A] or less During printing: 53 dB [A] or less Operating environment temperature: 50 to 86 °F
Operating environment (Printer unit only)		(10 to 30 °C) Humidity: 10 to 80 % RH (no condensation)
Power supply		100 - 127 V 50/60 Hz
Power consumption (at temperature of 68 °F (20 °C))		Average during operation: approx. 460 W*1 Average during standby: approx. 48 W*1 Average during Panel Off Mode (Power Save Mode 1): approx. 48 W*1 Average during Printer Power Save Mode (Power Save Mode 2): approx. 16 W*1 Maximum: 1280 W*2 or less *1 When the printer is with standard equipment *2 The instantaneous peak on startup when all the optional accessories are installed in the printer shall not be counted.
Consumables	Toner cartridge	- Canon Genuine Cartridge 111 Black - Canon Genuine Cartridge 111 Yellow - Canon Genuine Cartridge 111 Magenta - Canon Genuine Cartridge 111 Cyan Printable pages: approx. 6,000 pages* * When printing A4 or Letter size paper at 5 % page coverage with the default print density setting
	Printer unit and included parts	Printer unit (excluding the toner cartridges)approx. 48.5 lb (22.0 kg) Toner cartridge (each)approx. 2.6 lb (1.2 kg)
Weight	Consumables and optional accessories	Toner cartridge (each) (Canon Genuine Cartridge)

# **Controller Specifications**

СРИ	PowerPC 750CXr (400 MHz*)  * The upper limit of the frequency range	
Memory (RAM) capacity	Standard 128 MB Expandable up to 384 MB by installing an optional expansion RAM module	
Host interface	Parallel connector (IEEE1284 compatible) X 1 USB 2.0 Hi-Speed/USB Full-Speed (USB1.1 equivalent) X 1 LAN connector (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX) X 1	
User interface	LCD 16 characters X 1 line 8 LED indicators 8 Operation keys	
RAM slot	1	
ROM slot	1	
Expansion slot	1	

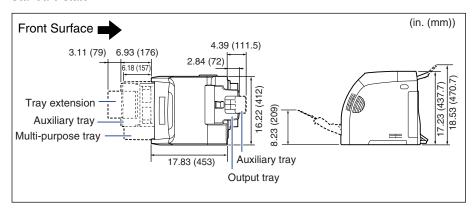
# **Software Specifications**

Command language	PCL 5c, UFR II
Built-in fonts	PCL: 80 Scalable fonts, 10 Bitmap fonts
Printable area	PCL 5c Data cannot be printed within a 0.17 in. (4.23 mm) margin (0.39 in. (10 mm) for envelopes) on all sides of the paper.  * You may not obtain the optimum print quality when printing data with no margin using the PCL 5c printer driver. It is recommended to secure a margin of 0.20 in. (5 mm) or more around the data.  UFR II Data cannot be printed within a 0.20 in. (5 mm) margin (0.39 in. (10 mm) for envelopes) on all sides of the paper.  * If you have selected the [Print with Upper Left of Sheet as Starting Point] check box in the [Finishing Details] dialog box in the UFR II printer driver, you can extend the printable area to near the edges of the paper. However, the data may be printed with the edges missing when a document with no margins is printed, even if the [Print with Upper Left of Sheet as Starting Point] check box is selected. In this case, specify the scaling factor in the UFR II printer driver to print smaller so that any data on the document will not miss, and then print again. Depending on the print data to be printed, however, the edge of paper may blot during color printing when the [Print with Upper Left of Sheet as Starting Point] check box is selected.

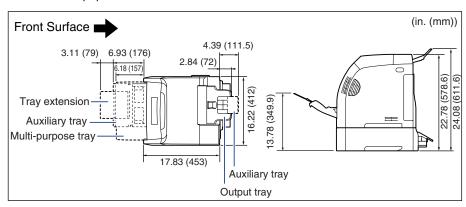
# **Dimensions of Each Part**

## ■ Printer unit

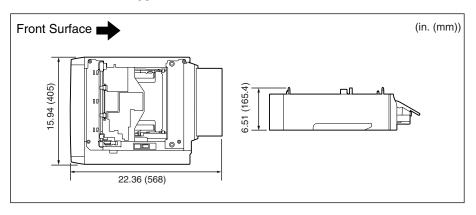
Standard state



· State with the paper feeder installed



## ■ PAPER FEEDER PF-93



# **Numerics**

10 Indicator, 1-9 100 Indicator, 1-9 1ST CALIBRATION, 6-56 2-SIDED PRINT., 6-30, 6-73 2-sided Printing, 4-53 Loading Paper, 4-55, 4-58 Manual 2-sided Printing, 4-56

# Δ

ADJ.START POS., 6-51 Adjusting the Color Balance, 8-66 Adjusting the Printing Position, 7-21 ALT.METHOD, 6-34 APPEND CR TO LF, 6-59 APPLETALK, 6-48 ASSURE JOB LOG, 6-22 AUTO ERROR SKIP, 6-15 Auto Error Skip, 8-33 **AUTO SELECTION, 6-26** Auxiliary Tray (Multi-purpose Tray), 1-8 Auxiliary Tray (Output Tray), 1-7

# В

B & W HALFTONES, 6-38 BIND.LOCATION, 6-32 Bitmapped Fonts (PCL), 10-7

C (Cyan) Toner Cartridge Slot, 1-9 CALIBRATE TIME, 6-19 CALIBRATE TIMER, 6-19

CALIBRATION, 6-63 Cancel Job, 3-15 [Cancel Job] Key, 1-10, 5-5 CANCEL JOB Menu, 5-14 Canceling a Job, 3-14 Cassette Protective Cover, 1-8 CASSETTE(n) SIZE (n = 1, 2), 6-23, 6-72CASSETTE(n) TYPE (n = 1, 2), 6-29, 6-72 Character Code Tables, 10-8 CLEANING, 6-63 Cleaning Fixing Roller, 7-19 Outside of the Printer, 7-27 CMS, 6-40 CMS SELECTION, 6-40 CMS/GAMMA, 6-40 COATED PAPER, 6-55 Coated Paper, 4-5 COLOR HALFTONES, 6-39 COLOR MODE, 6-38 COLOR REGIS.ADJ, 6-64 CONFIG.PAGE, 6-62 Configuration Page, 10-2 CONNECT.RECOG., 6-50 CONTROL MENU Options, 6-2 Control Panel, 1-10 COPIES, 6-31 **CURL ADJUSTMENT, 6-55** CUSTOM SIZE, 6-58

# D

DATE AND TIME, 6-16 DATE SETTING, 6-16 DAYLIGHT SAVING, 6-17 DEN.MEDIAN CONT, 6-64 DENSITY BLACK, 6-37

CYAN, 6-36 MAGENTA, 6-37 YELLOW, 6-37 DENSITY CONTROL, 6-64 Dimensions, 10-36 Display, 1-12 Duplex Unit, 1-9, 8-27

# E

[Edit and Preview] Mode, 3-8 **ENCRYPTED PRINT, 6-65** Encrypted Secured Print, 3-9 ENLRG A4 WIDTH, 6-60 Envelopes, 4-5 Error Message, 8-33 ETB (Electro static Transfer Belt) Unit, 1-9 ETHERNET DRIVER, 6-49 Expansion Slot, 1-8 EXT.I/F MENU, 6-50 EXT.I/F PRINT, 6-63 EXT.RX BUFFER, 6-51

# F

FEEDER MENU Options, 6-3 [Feeder Selection] Key, 1-11, 5-5 FONT NUMBER, 6-57 FONTS LIST, 6-62 Foot Positions, 2-6 Forced Output, 3-14 FORM FEED, 6-69 FORM LINES, 6-58 Front Cover, 1-8 FULL CALIBRATE, 6-64

# G

**GAMMA**, 6-43 **GRADATION LEVEL, 6-35** GRAY COMPENSATE, 6-39 GUTTER, 6-33

# Н

HALFTONES, 6-38 Handling Printer, 7-38 HARD DISK, 6-19 Hard Disk, 1-15, 9-22 HARD RESET, 6-69 Hard Reset, 3-17 HDD ALL ERASE, 6-54 HDD Indicator, 1-10 HDD MAINTENANCE, 6-54 Heavy Paper, 4-4 How to View the Display, 5-7

I/F CONNECTION, 6-45 INIT.N/W SET., 6-50 Installation Environment, 2-3 Installation Requirements, 2-4 Installation Site, 2-3 Installation Space, 2-5 INTERFACE MENU Options, 6-6 [Interrupt] Mode, 3-8 **INTERRUPT PRINT, 6-20 INVLDPAPER TRAY, 6-26** ISO Substitution Tables, 10-27

# J

Job Indicator, 1-10 [Job] Key, 1-10, 5-6 JOB LOG LIST, 6-68 JOB Menu, 5-12, 6-11

# K

K (Black) Toner Cartridge Slot, 1-9 Keys, 5-5

#### [OK] Key, 1-10, 5-6 Online, 3-5 Online Indicator, 1-11 Labels, 4-5 [Online] Key, 1-11, 5-5 LAN, 2-28 Optional Accessories, 1-13 LAN Connector, 1-9 ORIENTATION, 6-57 Laser Beam, xxi **OUTPUT PROFILE, 6-42** LAYOUT MENU Options, 6-4 Output Tray, 1-7, 4-15 Lift Handles, 1-8 Output Tray, 4-15 Loading Paper Paper Capacity, 4-16 Envelope, 4-43 Outputting Data (Forced Output), 3-14 Multi-purpose Tray, 4-35 Paper Cassette, 4-17 P M PANEL LANGUAGE, 6-15 Paper M (Magenta) Toner Cartridge Slot, 1-9 Printable Area, 4-7 MANUAL 2-SIDED, 6-30 Storage, 4-9 MATCHING METHOD, 6-42 Paper Cassette, 1-8, 4-17 Menu Categories, 5-3 Handling, 4-14 Menu Functions, 5-2 Loading Paper, 4-19 Menu Functions and Menu Operation, 5-9 Paper Size Setting, 4-31 Message, 8-33 Paper Type Setting, 4-33 Message Indicator, 1-10 Paper Feeder, 1-13, 9-2 MODE TIMEOUT, 6-45 Paper Guides, 1-8 Multi-purpose Tray, 1-8, 4-35 Paper Jams, 8-4 Handling, 4-14 PAPER SAVE (PCL SETUP), 6-56 Loading Paper, 4-36 PAPER SAVE (UFR II SETUP), 6-61 Paper Size Setting, 4-48 Paper Size, 4-2 Paper Type Setting, 4-50 Abbreviations of Paper Sizes, 4-7 List, 4-2 Setting, 4-48 N PAPER SOURCE, 6-71 Paper Source, 4-11 NETWORK, 6-56 Paper Capacity, 4-12 NETWORK MENU, 6-47 Precautions for Handling, 4-14 Network Status Print, 10-3 Selection, 4-13 NW STATUS PRINT, 6-63 Type, 4-12 Paper Source Indicators, 1-11 Paper Type List, 4-3 Paper Type Setting, 4-33, 4-50 Parallel Connector, 1-9 Offline, 3-6 Parts and Their Functions, 1-7

PCL Fonts List, 10-4

PCL SETUP Options, 6-9

OFFSET X, 6-31

OFFSET Y, 6-31

PCL UTILITY, 6-62 Rating Label, 1-8 Peripheral Space Required, 2-5 Ready Indicator, 1-10 PITCH, 6-58 Rear Cover, 1-8 Plain Paper, 4-4 **RECVRY PRINTING, 6-52** POINT SIZE, 6-57 REMOTE UI SET., 6-49 POW. SAVE TIMER, 6-18 REPORTLOG LST, 6-68 Power Cord, 2-26 [Reset] Key, 1-11, 5-6 POWER SAVE MODE, 6-13 RESET Menu, 5-13, 6-11 Power Save Mode, 3-2 RGB SRCE PROF., 6-41 POWER SAVE TIME, 6-14 RIP ONCE, 6-21 POWER SAVE TIME (TIMER SETTINGS), 6-19 Power Socket, 1-8 S Power Supply Connecting the Power Cord, 2-26 Problems, 8-49 Scalable Fonts (PCL), 10-5 Turning the Printer OFF, 2-40 SECURED PRINT, 6-66 Turning the Printer ON, 2-33 Secured Print, 3-9 Power Supply Requirements, 2-4 [Secured Print] Mode, 3-7 Power Switch, 1-7 SECURED TYPE, 6-21 [Print] Mode, 3-7 **SECURING TIME, 6-20** Print Quality Problems, 8-56 SELECT FEEDER Menu, 5-15, 6-12 Printer Service Call Display, 8-47 Cleaning, 7-27 Setting Items, 6-2 Handling, 7-38 Setting Priority, 5-3 Moving, 7-30 [Settings] Key, 1-11, 5-6 Operation Problems, 8-49 SETUP Menu, 5-9, 6-2 Printer Cable, 2-32 SETUP Menu Initialization, 5-17 Printer Status to Enter the Menu Operation, 5-4 SHOW WARNINGS, 6-15 Printing Position Adjustment Print, 10-3 SHUT DOWN, 6-70 Printing Problem, 8-2 SMB, 6-48 PRNTPOSNPRINT, 6-64 SNMP, 6-48 Problems with the Printout Results, 8-53 SOFT RESET, 6-69 PWR SAVE IN ERR, 6-14 Soft Reset, 3-16 SP.IMAGE MODE, 6-53 SP.PRINT MODE, 6-55 SPECIAL MODE J, 6-52 Specifications, 10-31 QUALITY CHANGE, 6-44 SPOOLER, 6-49 START WAIT TIME, 6-49 QUALITY MENU Options, 6-5 QUICK FORMAT, 6-54 STD FORMAT, 6-55 STD PAPER SIZE, 6-24 STD PAPER TYPE, 6-27 STORE LOG LST, 6-68 R [Store] Mode, 3-8 Stored Job Print, 3-11 RAM, 1-14, 9-15 STOREJOB LIST, 6-67

STOREJOB PRINT, 6-67 SUBSTITUTE SIZE, 6-53 SYMBOL SET, 6-58 Symbol Sets Supported, 10-8

# T

TCP/IP SETTINGS, 6-47 Temperature/Humidity Conditions, 2-3 TIME SETTING, 6-16 TIME ZONE, 6-17 TIMER SETTINGS, 6-17 Toner Cartridge Handling, 7-16 Message, 7-2 Replacement, 7-2, 7-3 Storage, 7-18 TONER SAVE, 6-35 Top Cover, 1-7 Transparency, 4-5 Tray Extension, 1-8 TRAY PAPER SIZE, 6-22, 6-72 TRAY PAPER TYPE, 6-27, 6-72 TRAY PRIORITY, 6-25 Typeface Samples, 10-5

# U

UFR II SETUP Options, 6-10
Ultrasonic Humidifier, 2-3
UNIT OF MEASURE, 6-58
Unusable Paper, 4-8
UPDATE FIRMWARE, 6-56
Usable Paper, 4-2
USB, 2-30, 6-56
USB Connector, 1-9
USER MAIN. Options, 6-8
User Manual CD-ROM Menu, 1-5
[Utility] Key, 1-11, 5-6
UTILITY Menu, 5-11, 6-10



Ventilation Slots, 1-7, 1-8



WAKE UP TIME, 6-18 WAKE UP TIMER, 6-17 Warning Message, 8-33 WARNING STEP, 6-14



X DIMENSION, 6-59



Y (Yellow) Toner Cartridge Slot, 1-9 Y DIMENSION, 6-59

# Canon

#### CANON INC.

30-2, Shimomaruko 3-chome, Ohta-ku, Tokyo 146-8501, Japan

#### CANON U.S.A., INC.

One Canon Plaza, Lake Success, NY 11042, U.S.A.

#### CANON CANADA INC.

6390 Dixie Road Mississauga, Ontario L5T 1P7, Canada

### **CANON EUROPA N.V.**

Bovenkerkerweg 59-61 1185 XB Amstelveen, The Netherlands

#### **CANON FRANCE S.A.S.**

17, quai du Président Paul Doumer 92414 Courbevoie Cedex, France

#### **CANON COMMUNICATION & IMAGE FRANCE S.A.S.**

12, rue de l'Industrie 92414 Courbevoie Cedex, France

#### CANON (U.K.) LTD.

Woodhatch, Reigate, Surrey, RH2 8BF, United Kingdom

#### **CANON DEUTSCHLAND GmbH**

Europark Fichtenhain A10, 47807 Krefeld, Germany

## CANON ITALIA S.p.A.

Via Milano, 8 20097 San Donato Milanese (MI) Italy

#### CANON LATIN AMERICA, INC.

703 Waterford Way Suite 400 Miami, Florida 33126 U.S.A.

#### **CANON AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD**

1 Thomas Holt Drive, North Ryde, Sydney, N.S.W. 2113, Australia

#### **CANON CHINA CO., LTD**

15F Jinbao Building No. 89 Jinbao Street, Dongcheng District, Beijing 100005, China

### CANON SINGAPORE PTE. LTD.

1 HarbourFront Avenue #04-01 Keppel Bay Tower, Singapore 098632

USRM1-0579 (00)